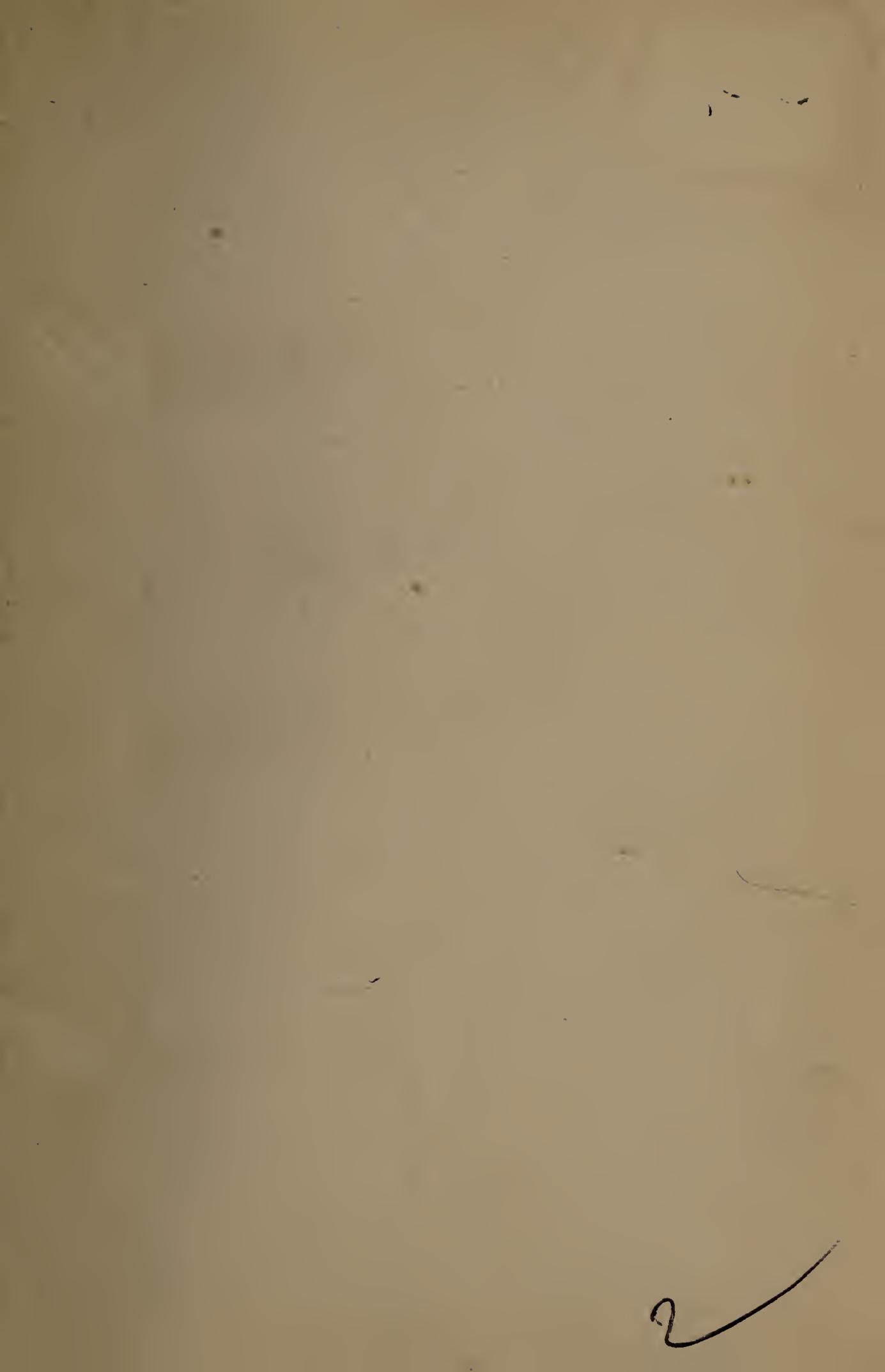


HANDBOOK OF
LATIN COMPOSITION
BROWNE





HANDBOOK
OF
LATIN COMPOSITION

By the same Author (Price 3/- net)—

**HANDBOOK OF
GREEK COMPOSITION**

WITH EXERCISES FOR
JUNIOR AND MIDDLE CLASSES
Seventh Edition.

A Key to the Exercises can be supplied to Tutors.

HANDBOOK
OF
Latin Composition

WITH EXERCISES

BY

HENRY BROWNE, S.J.



*M.A. New College, Oxford; Fellow of the Royal University of
Ireland; Professor of Greek at University College, Dublin;
Author of 'Handbook of Homeric Study'*

SECOND EDITION

BOSTON COLLEGE LIBRARY
CHESTNUT HILL, MASS.,

LONGMANS, GREEN, AND CO.

39 PATERNOSTER ROW, LONDON
NEW YORK, BOMBAY, AND CALCUTTA

1907

PREFACE.

THIS little handbook of Latin prose corresponds closely with the Greek one which was very kindly received when I published it some years back, and which has been adopted in a good many schools in Ireland, England, and America. It is somewhat less easy to succeed in making clear the rules for Latin than for Greek prose composition; but it is probable that those who are accustomed to a grammar constructed on definite lines for one language will be glad to see the system adapted to another, and that a cognate, language.

I do not pretend that the system is perfect, (nor do I think any one system can be without drawbacks), but it is at least the outcome of an honest effort to simplify teaching, and once more I disclaim the attempt to produce a handbook that will dispense with a teacher's aid.

The distinguishing features of the arrangement are the division into Simple and Complex sentences (not usually followed in syntaxes), and the keeping together of the rules without separating them from their several examples. This could only be effected by printing the rules and examples on opposite pages—an idea suggested by the large Latin grammar of Mr. Roby, to whom I can hardly express my obligations in adequate terms. His originality, penetration, and simplicity, in dealing with the difficult problems of Latin construction, goes a long way towards removing from his countrymen the charge of inferior scholarship.

Although this handbook is larger than its companion one, there is a smaller number of the principal rules to be committed to memory, and therefore printed in conspicuous type; while a larger amount of matter has been

PREFACE.

thrown into the observations, which are of lesser moment, especially for the younger students who are just beginning composition—a stage when it is important to keep only essentials before their minds.

While trying to avoid what is controversial or speculative, I have ventured in some points, especially in connection with the cases, to add a few fundamental reasons for some of the less obvious rules; believing that if judiciously given, such hints are a help to memory, besides being a corrective to the tendency to “cram” grammar rules. Many persons will possibly think that my books tend to encourage this vice. I do not deny the danger of such abuse, but I do not think it is a reason for condemning a thing which, when not abused, may be a help to proper teaching. And what greater help can there be towards teaching the grammar of a language, with a view to its composition, than a succinct and tabular statement of the leading principles and rules of the language?

The vocabulary does not extend beyond Parts I. and II. of the Exercises. Some pieces of easy English prose from the best authors, are added for continuous prose translation, and for these an English-Latin dictionary will be needed, but should be used as sparingly as possible. Most of the pieces have been tried by my own pupils, as they formed a collection which was made gradually for the purpose of teaching—some of them, especially the earlier ones, having been culled from previous, and possibly printed, collections.

My warm thanks are due to my former colleague the Rev. Thomas O’Nowlan, M.A., for some valuable suggestions; and also to my colleague, Mr. Patrick Semple, F.R.U.I., for assistance, especially in the correcting of proof sheets, and that during his hard-earned vacation.

H. B.

CONTENTS.

PART THE FIRST.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.			PAGE
Section I.—THE ACCUSATIVE	-	-	2
„ II.—THE DATIVE	-	-	8
APPENDIX I.—CONSTRUCTION OF			
VERBS	-	-	14
„ III.—THE GENITIVE	-	-	16
„ IV.—THE TRUE ABLATIVE	-	-	24
„ V.—THE ABLATIVE (INSTRUMENTAL)	-	-	28
„ VI.—THE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE (LOCATIVE)	-	-	34
„ VII.—COMPARISON	-	-	42
„ VIII.—THE PREPOSITIONS	-	-	46
„ IX.—THE PRONOUNS	-	-	50
„ X.—THE TENSES	-	-	56
„ XI.—THE PASSIVE VOICE	-	-	60
„ XII.—THE INFINITIVE	-	-	64
„ XIII.—THE PARTICIPLE	-	-	70
„ XIV.—THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	-	-	76
„ XV.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE	-	-	80
„ XVI.—WISHES, COMMANDS, PROHIBITIONS			84
„ XVII.—DIRECT QUESTIONS (INCLUDING DELIBERATIVE)	-	-	88
PART THE SECOND.—THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.			
Sect. XVIII.—SEQUENCE OF TENSE	-	-	92
„ XIX.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS (INCLUDING DELIBERATIVE)	-	-	96

	PAGES
Sect. XX.—THE OBLIQUE SUBJUNCTIVE -	100
„ XXI.—THE FINAL SUBJUNCTIVE -	104
„ XXII.—THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE	108
„ XXIII.—THE CAUSAL SUBJUNCTIVE -	112
„ XXIV.—THE HYPOTHETICAL SUBJUNCTIVE	116
APPENDIX II.—THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS - - -	124
APPENDIX III.—TABULAR VIEW OF SUBJUNCTIVE - -	128
„ XXV.—ORATIO OBLIQUA - -	130
„ XXVI.—HYPOTHETICAL SENTENCES IN O.O.	136
„ XXVII.—REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS IN O.O. -	138
„ XXVIII.—IDIOMATIC PHRASES - -	140
APPENDIX IV.—INDEX OF CONJUNCTIONS AND PARTICLES - - -	148
„ V.—HINTS ON STYLE - -	152
EXERCISES.—PART I.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE	156
„ — „ II.—THE COMPLEX SENTENCE	176
„ „ III.—CONNECTED PROSE -	195
VOCABULARY FOR EXERCISES, PARTS I. AND II.	229



NOTE.

The asterisk () placed opposite certain Rules indicates that they are of exceptional importance, and must be remembered in doing all exercises subsequent to their occurrence.*

Part the First.

THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

§ I.—THE ACCUSATIVE.

Obs.—The fundamental idea expressed by the Accusative Case is the *term of motion (whither)*, and since all action is a kind of motion, the Case is naturally used to express the *Direct Object*. Further, since motion is impossible except through extension, the meaning of the Case has been made to embrace the idea of *Extent*. Hence the following:—

R. 1.—The use of the Accusative is threefold; *i.e.*, to express:—

- i. The term of motion (*whither*).
- ii. The Direct Object of the verb.
- iii. The extent of an action.

* **R. 2.**—To express the term of motion the Accusative is used (*without a preposition*) only if it is the name of a town or small island.

Obs. 1.—*Humus, domus, and rus* follow the construction of towns.

Obs. 2.—However, the *supine in -um* is in reality the *accusative of a verbal noun*, used to express the *term of motion*. It can therefore be used only after verbs of motion.

R. 3.—The Direct Object is used after:—

- i. Transitive verbs (*including impersonals*).

§ I.—THE ACCUSATIVE.

R. 2.—Nocturnus introitus **Smyrnam** quasi in hostium urbem. (*Cic. Phil.* ii. 2.)

An attack upon Smyrna by night, as if upon a city of the enemy.

Obs. 1.—**Galli domos** abierant:

The Gauls had departed homewards.

Obs. 2.—**Exclusi eos, quos tu ad me salutatum miseras.** (*Cic. Cat.* i. 4.)

I refused admission to those whom you sent to call upon me.

R. 3.—

i. **Cornicu oculos confixit. Te citharæ decent. Pudet regem facti.**

ii. Intransitive verbs used transitively.

iii. Intransitive verbs compounded with prepositions governing the Accusative.

iv. Passive verbs, with the force of an **Indirect Middle Voice** (*which retains the accusative of the active*).

Obs. 1.—This construction, which is called the *Greek Accusative*, hardly occurs in classical prose; but it is rather common in the poets, especially in the *past participle*, (1) with some *part* of the body, or (2) *article* worn on it, as the Direct Object.

Obs. 2.—The accusative of *Exclamation* (often after an interjection) may be explained as a *direct object* by the ellipse of “to think of,” or such words.

R. 4.—The following classes of verbs govern a **Double Accusative** (*i.e.*, Direct Object of both person and thing):—

i. Verbs of teaching.

ii. Verbs of concealing.

iii. Some verbs of asking.

Obs. 1.—Peto, postulo, and quæro take only an accus. of *the thing*.

Obs. 2.—When such verbs (R. 4) occur in the Passive, the *object of the person* only may become *subject*, and the *object of the thing* is retained in the accus. case.

Obs. 3.—A few verbs take an accus. either of the person or of the thing, but not of both together.

ii. **Tribunatum** etiam nunc spirans, locum seditionis
quærit. (*Liv.* iii. 36.)
Even now breathing (aiming at) the tribuneship, he is
seeking an opportunity for a revolt.

iii. Unus velut morbus invaserat **omnes** Italiae **civitates**.
(*Liv.* xxiv. 2.)
One malady as it were had attacked all the states of Italy.

iv. **Pueri** lævo suspensi **loculos** **tabulamque** lacerto.
(*Hor. S.* i. 6, 74.)
Boys having their satchel and slate hung from the
left arm.

Obs. 2.—**Hunc**cine hominem! **hanc**cine impudentiam, Judi-
ces! (*Cic. Verr.*)

Me miserum! Pro deorum atque hominum **fidem**!
Alas! me wretched! Heavens above!

R. 4.—

i. **Consules** **causam** Sthenii totum **Senatum** docent.
(*Cic. Verr.*)

ii. Non te celavi **sermonem** T. Appii. (*Cic. Fam.*)

i i. **Tribunus** **me** primum **sententiam** rogavit. (*Cic. Q. Fr.*)

Obs. 2.—Latinæ legiones longa societate **militiam** Romanam
edoctæ.

Obs. 3.—Circumdat **urbem** vallo, } He surrounds the city with
Circumdat urbi **vallum**, } a rampart.
Dono **te** libro,
Dono **tibi** **librum**, } I present you with a book.

Obs. 4.—The *Factitive* Accusative is sometimes called a Double Accusative. It is merely an apposition of one noun to another.

Obs. 5.—A few transitive verbs compounded with **trans** and **circum** govern two accusatives.

*R. 5.—The Accusative of **Extent** may be used :—

- i. Of place.
- ii. Of time.
- iii. Of the part concerned (called Accusative of Closer Definition).
- iv. Extent of the action of the verb (called Cognate Accusative).

Obs.—Some authorities prefer to call the last-mentioned an Accusative of the **Internal Object**, thus classing it among the Accusatives of the Direct Object.

R. 6.—The Cognate Accusative occurs very commonly as a neuter adjective or pronoun.

Obs.—Such an Accusative is called an **Adverbial Accusative**, or Accusative of **Respect**.

Obs. 4.—Ciceronem universa civitas **consulem** declaravit. (*Cic.*)
The whole state declared Cicero consul.

Obs. 5.—Hannibal **nonaginta** millia peditum Iberum traduxit. (*Liv.*)
Hannibal led 90,000 foot across the Iberus.

R. 5.—

- i. **Lama** quinque dierum **iter** a Carthagine abest.
(*Liv.* xxx. 29.)
Lama is distant a five days' march from Carthage.
- ii. **Annum** jam audis Cratippum. (*Cic. Off.* i. 1.)
- iii. **Os humerosque** Deo similis.
- iv. Cur non eosdem **cursus** hoc tempore cucurrerunt.

R. 6.—**Quid** prodest? **Quid id** refert tua?
Vellem **idem** possem gloriari **quod** Cyrus. (*Cic. Sen.* 10.)
Nescio **quid** perturbatus esse videris.
Multum te ista opinio fefellit. (*Cic. Verr.*)



§ II.—THE DATIVE.

Obs.—The fundamental idea expressed by the Dative is someone *interested or affected* by an action, though not directly and primarily acted upon. Hence the following:—

R. 7.—The use of the Dative is threefold; *i.e.*, it may be:—

- i. The **Indirect Object**.
- ii. The **Person interested** (*called Dative of Advantage*).
- iii. **Predicative** (*called also Dative of Purpose*).

Obs. 1.—The first two are almost always, the last is never, used of *persons*.

Obs. 2.—Between the first and second the distinction is but slightly marked, and in practice they run into each other. In fact, the Indirect Object may be rightly considered a special case of *Advantage*.

R. 8.—The **Indirect Object** is used (i.) together with a **Direct Object**, or (ii.) without it, according as it depends on a transitive or intransitive verb.

Obs. 1.—Many verbs which represent transitives in English are intransitive in Latin, and take an *Indirect Object only*.

Obs. 2.—For the *impersonal* construction in the Passive, see R. 57.

§ II.—THE DATIVE.

R. 7.—

- i. Epulari Gracchus permisit **militibus**. (*Liv.* xxiv. 16.)
- ii. Non solum **nobis** divites esse volumus. (*Cic.*)
- iii. Ampla domus sæpe fit domino **dedecori**.

R. 8.—

- i. Naves, quibus præfuerat, **Cleomeni** tradit. (*Cic. Verr.*)
He hands over to Cleomenes the ships which he commanded.
- ii. Liber is est existimandus, qui nulli turpitudini servit.
(*Cic.*)
That man is to be considered free, who is a slave to no passion.

Obs.—See *Appendix following this Section.*

* R. 9.—The Dative of Advantage occurs after very many verbs and adjectives, especially those expressing benefit, fitness, nearness, friendship, and their opposites, and feelings of the mind in general.

Obs. 1.—Note that the following are always used with an accusative of the *Direct Object*, *juvo*, *lædo*, *moneo*, *jubeo*, *veto*.

Obs. 2.—The *Ethical Dative* is a special instance of the *Dative of Advantage*. It is used chiefly of personal pronouns, and may be distinguished by the fact that it is easily omitted without injuring the construction.

R. 10.—To express Possession, the Dative of Advantage is frequently used, even where the genitive might be expected, especially as the Complement of *Esse*.

Obs.—With such a dative (i.) a *Proper name* is often attracted to the same case (where the nominative could also occur), and (ii.) after certain impersonals a similar attraction is commonly used.

R. 11.—Many verbs compounded with *ante*, *post*, *præ*, *in*, *inter*, *cum*, *sub*, *super*, *ob*, take a Dative of Advantage.

Obs. 1.—With many of these verbs other constructions occur, and often they cannot take the Dative to express *local relation* in a perfectly *literal* sense.

Obs. 2.—*Verbal Nouns*, especially *gerundival* expressions, are sometimes put in the Dative when they signify *work to be done*.

[Obs. 3.—The Dative is used in *Poetry only* to express the term of motion (*whither*), and this is to be avoided in prose.]

R. 9.—**Homines hominibus** plurimum et prosunt et obsunt. (*Cic.*)
Men greatly benefit and harm their fellow-men.

Probus invidet nemini: The good man envies no one.
Homo gratior multitudini quam Patribus.

Numquid iratus es mihi?

Fiunt omnia castris quam urbi similiora. (*Liv.* iv. 31.)

Obs. 1.—**Multum potes nos apud Plancum juvare:**
You are able to help me greatly with Plancus. (*Cic.*)
Sperare nos amici jubent: Our friends bid us hope.

Obs. 2.—**Quid mihi Celsus agit?** What is my Celsus doing?
Hæc vobis illorum militia fuit:
This you see was their service in the field.

R. 10.—**Sese omnes Cæsari ad pedes projiciunt.** (*Cic.*)
All throw themselves at Cæsar's feet.

Troja huic loco nomen est: This place is named Troy.
Huic homini non minor vanitas inerat quam audacia.

Obs.—(i.) **Scipio, cui Africano cognomen fuit.** (*Sall.*)
Scipio, whose name was Africanus.

(ii.) **Licuit Themistocli esse otioso.** (*Cic.*)
Themistocles had it in his power to be at leisure.

R. 11.—**Cæsari venienti occurrit:** He meets Cæsar as he comes.
Ea res quoque terrorem attulit Sabiniis. (*Liv.*)
Nos onera quibusdam bestiis imponimus. (*Cic. de Nat. De.*)

Obs. 1.—**Equites proprius tumulum accedere, et ad nostros adequitare.** (*Cæs.*)

Obs. 2.—**Decemviri legibus scribendis:**
Decemvirs for drawing up laws.
Dies composita gerendæ rei est. Solvendo esse.

[**Obs. 3.**—**It cœlo clamorque virum clangorque tubarum.**]

R. 12.—The Dative of the Agent is used after :—

- i. Verbal Adjectives ending in *-bilis*.
- ii. Gerunds and Gerundives.
- iii. (*Sometimes*) Passive Participles.

[Obs. 1.—In poetry, add *passive verbs* generally.]

Obs. 2.—The Dative is used because here the person is viewed rather as the *one interested in the action* than as the one acting.

Obs. 3.—The ordinary construction for the agent (*the ablative after a or ab*) is sometimes found after the above forms, especially where another dative renders it necessary (in order to *avoid ambiguity*).

R. 13.—The Predicative Dative is used :—

- i. Of Abstract Singular Nouns.
- ii. Without any attribute (*except* *magno*, *tanto*, &c.)
- iii. (*Chiefly*) with *esse* or *habere*.

Obs. 1.—However, *auxilio*, *subsilio*, and *præsidio* are used after *verbs of motion*, and some other verbs.

Obs. 2.—The explanation of this Dative is obscure and doubtful.

Obs. 3.—When the *Predicative* Dative occurs along with a Dative of Advantage, the construction is called a *Double Dative*.

R. 12.—

- i. Consulem invenerunt miserabilem **bonis sociis**, super-
bis atque infidelibus spernendum. (*Liv. xxiii. 5.*)
- ii. They found a Consul deserving pity of our good allies,
contempt of the proud and faithless ones.
- iii. Scripta sunt plura **nemini** e nostris. (*Cic. Fin.*)
No one of our writers has written more.

[Obs. 1.—*Carmina quæ scribuntur aquæ potoribus.* (*Hor. Ep. i. 19.*)]
Songs which are written by water-drinkers.

Obs. 3.—*Aguntur bona civium, quibus est a vobis consulendum.*
(*Cic. Man. 2.*)

The property of citizens is at stake, and for them you
must take counsel.

R. 13.—*Cibus illis contra famem et sitim, non luxuriae erat.* (*Sall. J. 89.*)

Food was for them to satisfy hunger and thirst, not for
pleasure nor feasting.

ii. **Magno odio** est apud populum :
He is much hated by the people.

Obs. 1.—**Equitatum auxilio** Cæsari miserant. (*Cæsar.*)

They had sent the cavalry as an assistance to Cæsar.

Quinque cohortes castris **præsidio** reliquit. (*Cæs. 7.*)

He left five cohorts as a defence for the camp.

Obs. 3.—**Cui bono?** To whom (is it) an advantage ?

Nec **impedimento** id **rebus gerendis** erat. (*Liv. xxvi. 24.*)
Nor was that an obstacle to the business.

APPENDIX I.—CONSTRUCTION OF VERBS.

A.—VERBS THAT GOVERN THE DATIVE ONLY.

adversor, oppose.	obedio, obey.
arrideo, smile.	obsum, hinder.
assentior, assent.	occurro, { meet.
auxilior, come to assist.	obviam eo, } opitulor, assist.
benefacio, benefit.	oppono, oppose.
benedico, bless.	obtempero, obey.
blandior, flatter.	obtrecto, disparage.
confido, trust.	parco, spare.
conviciar, upbraid.	pareo, obey.
credo, believe.	patrocinor, protect.
diffido, distrust.	persuadeo, fully persuade.
faveo, favor.	placeo, please.
fido, trust.	præcipio, instruct.
gratulor, congratulate.	prosum, be of advantage.
ignosco, pardon.	renitor, struggle.
impero, command.	resisto, resist.
indulgeo, indulge.	satisfacio, satisfy.
invideo, envy.	servio, serve.
irascor, be angry with.	spondeo, promise.
maledico, curse.	studeo, be zealous.
morigeror, } gratify.	suadeo, try to persuade
morem gero, }	subsum, approach.
noceo, injure.	subvenio, aid.
nubo, marry (a husband).	succenseo, be enraged.
	succurro, assist.
	vaco, be at leisure

B.—VERBS THAT VARY THEIR CONSTRUCTION.

	WITH ACCUSATIVE	WITH DATIVE	WITH PREPOSITION
accedo, æmular,	approach, rival,	be added, envy.	in, ad, <i>same as accus.</i> —
caveo, cedo, consto,	beware of, grant, [constat, it is established,]	take precautions. yield, be consistent,	— [abl., retire.] [abl., cost.]
consulo, convenio,	consult, meet,	consult interests. {suit, {impers., be agreed	— —
deficio, do (litteras)	fail, {hand (a letter) {rarely write,	same as accus., —	ab, revolt. ad, post (a letter).
excuso,	{excuse, {plead in excuse.	—	—
incumbo,	—	lean,	ad, in, devote one- self.
intersum, -est,	—	be present, [gen. or abl. of fem. sing.,* it is the interest],	in, <i>same as dat.</i> inter.
macto, maneo, medeor, medicor, metuo, moderor,	sacrifice, await, heal, remedy, be afraid of, govern,	— remain. same as accus. be anxious for. restrain.	[abl. <i>same as accus.</i>] — — — — —
parco, præsto, præverto prospicio, provideo,	— (se) prove, fulfil, anticipate, foresee,	spare, excel. prefer. provide.	ab, refrain. — — — —
solvo, succedo, subeo,	release, approach, approach,	pay. succeed to, —	— in, <i>same as accus.</i> sub, ad, <i>same as accus.</i>
subsum, sufficio,	— supply,	approach. suffice.	— —
timeo	be afraid of	fear for.	—
tempero,	govern, mix,	{restrain, {spare,	ab, refrain.

* Only in the case of Pronouns (see R. 19, Obs. 1).

§ III.—THE GENITIVE.

Obs.—The fundamental idea expressed by the Genitive is **Reference** or **Connexion** in general of one thing with another. The connexion is of a different character according as the word on which the Genitive depends is a *thing* or an *action* (whether the action be expressed by a verbal noun or by a verb proper). Hence the following:—

R. 14.—The use of the Genitive is chiefly two-fold:—

- i. To qualify or limit nouns (*like an adjective*).
- ii. To express a sort of secondary object.

R. 15.—Under the first heading can be arranged the chief uses of the Genitive after nouns, to express:—

- i. Description (*or Definition*).
- ii. Possession.
- iii. Quality.
- iv. The Whole (after any word signifying a part, called **Partitive Genitive**).
- v. The Subject of an action (called **Subjective Genitive**).

Obs. i.—Under the *Genitive of Description* may be placed that of *apposition* (i.) which is somewhat rare—a word in actual apposition (ii.) (*in the same case*), being more ordinary than a genitive of this sort.

§ III.—THE GENITIVE.

R. 15.—

- i. **Pugna Trebiæ**—**Acervus frumenti**—**Colluvio mixtorum omnis generis animantium.**
- ii. **Scriptores Græciæ**—**Implorare hominum fidem.**
- iii. **Vir prisæ et nimis duræ severitatis**—**Homo magni ingenii.**
- iv. **Nihil humanarum rerum**—**Magna vis auri.**
- v. **Meâ unius operâ**—**Timor hostium :**
The fear felt by the enemy.

Obs. 1.—(i.) **Hæc vox voluptatis**—**Promontorium Miseni.**

(ii.) **Urbs Roma**—**Summus mons :**
The top of the mountain.

Obs. 2.—The *Possessive Genitive* frequently occurs depending on a noun omitted, which is either (i.) the word *son*, *wife*, or *daughter*, &c., or (ii.) when used with the verb *est*, a word meaning *property*, *mark*, *duty*, &c.

Obs. 3.—The *Genitive of Quality* (like the abl.) must not be used without an attribute. It may be said perhaps to express what is *inherent and abiding* rather than the ablative.

Obs. 4.—The *Partitive Genitive* is common after adjectives (*esp.* comparatives and superlatives), numerals, and even pronouns and adverbs.

Obs. 5.—The *Subjective Genitive* cannot be used of a *personal pronoun*, but is replaced by the corresponding *possessive*.

R. 16.—To the second heading may be referred the **Objective Genitive** (*or Genitive expressing the object of an action*).

Obs.—A few adjectives, as *par*, *alienus*, *proprius*, *propior*, and *similis*, take both genitive and dative, mostly with different shades of meaning. With regard to the last, the rule that it is used with the genitive to express *internal* likeness only is hardly a trustworthy one. When the object of *similis* is a living thing, Cicero uses the genitive.

R. 17.—Verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, and *acquitting* (*with a few cognate adjectives*), take a genitive of the **Charge or Penalty**.

Obs. 2.—(i.) **Hectoris Andromache**—Pugnatum est ad **Spei** :
The battle was fought at (the Temple) of Hope.

(ii.) **Cujusvis** est errare :
It is (the part) of everyone to err.

Militum est duci parere :
It is (the duty) of soldiers . . .

Nihil est tam **angusti animi** quam amare divitias :
Nothing is (the mark) of . . .

Obs. 3.—**Vir prisæ severitatis**, or **vir severus** [*not vir severitatis*].

Homo magni ingenii, or **ingeniosus** [*not homo ingenii*].

Compare the above examples with the following :—

Voluptas picta pulcherrimo vestitu et ornatu regali.
(*Cic. Fin.*)

Pleasure painted with beautiful apparel and queenly adornments.

Obs. 4.—**Maximus omnium**—**Quot millia hominum**—**Quidquam novi**—**Satis eloquentiæ**.

Obs. 5.—**Mea unius opera**—**timor noster** : The fear felt by us.

R. 16.—**Timor hostium**—**nostri**:

The fear inspired by the enemy—by us.

Bellum Pyrrhi : The war against Pyrrhus.

Cura rerum alienarum—**Jactura suorum.** (*Cæs.*)

R. 17.—**Ambitus alterum accusavit.** (*Cic. Læt. 7.*)

He accused the other of bribery.

Capitalis poenæ damnat. (*Livy.*) Accusare capitum sumere supplicium de manifestis rerum capitalium. (*Sall.*) To punish those caught in capital offences.

Obs. 1.—If, as it seems, this genitive depends on **crimine** understood, it is one of *Description* or *Apposition*.

Obs. 2.—The *abative of the Penalty* is equally common. (See R. 38, Obs. 3.)

***R. 18.**—An Objective Genitive is used after verbs and adjectives signifying mental states (*especially remembering* and *forgetting*).

Obs. 1.—Verbs of *reminding* generally take a genitive of the thing with an accus. of the person.

Obs. 2.—Verbs of *remembering* (*esp. recordor*) may take a direct object in the accusative, and always when the object is a neuter pronoun.

Obs. 3.—The following adjectives come under this rule:—**cupidus**, **avarus**, **invidus**, **parcus**, **peritus**, **prudens**, **conscius**, **insuetus**, **compos**, many *pres. partic.* used as adjectives, as **potens**, **patiens**, &c., &c.

R. 19.—The impersonals, **Interest** and (*sometimes*) **Refert**, take a genitive of the person, and many impersonals (*signifying emotion*) take a genitive of the cause of the emotion.

Obs. 1.—After **Interest** and **Refert**, instead of personal pronouns, use the *possessive, fem. abl. sing.* (which probably agrees with an omitted noun).

Obs. 2.—Condemnato eodem ac ego te crimine. (*Cic. Fam.*)

So scelere damnare—*capite* damnare.

R. 18.—Venit mihi **Platonis** in mentem. (*Cic.*)

I chanced to think of Plato.

Nec unquam obliviscar **illius noctis.** (*Cic.*)

Aliquando miseremini **sociorum.**

Obs. 1.—Certiorem me **sui consilii** fecit. (*Cic. Att.*)

Obs. 2.—Qui sunt boni cives nisi qui patriæ **beneficia** memin-
erunt? (*Cic. Plauc.*)

Who are good citizens, except those who remember the
benefits conferred by their country?

Multa oblisceris, **hoc** recordaris.

Obs. 3.—**Alieni** appetens, **sui** profusus. (*Sall.*)

Covetous of another's property, prodigal of his own.

Patiens laborum : Capable of enduring toil.

[**Patiens** (*part.*) **labores** : Actually enduring toil.]

R. 19.—Quid **Milionis** intererat interfici Clodium? (*Cic. Mil.*)

What advantage was it to Milo that Cl. should be slain?

Pudet me **deorum hominumque.** (*Liv.*)

I blush before Heaven and earth.

Obs. 1.—Quid id **tua** refert? What business is that of yours?

Obs. 2.—**Interest** and **Refert** are followed by the *infin.*, or by **ut** (and **ne**) clauses to signify *what is of interest*, and either by a *genitive (of price)*, as **magni**, or a *neuter accus.*, as **multum**, to indicate the degree.

R. 20.—Verbs and adjectives signifying fulness and want take a (*partitive*) genitive.

Obs. 1.—The verbs however, with the exception of a few in prose, prefer the *ablative*.

Obs. 2.—This class of adjectives is numerous, including *verbals in -ax*, and many others, as **expers**, **particeps**, **consors**, **inops**, **plenus**, **inanis**. Most of them take also the *ablative*.

***R. 21.**—The **Genitive of Place** (*where*) is used in the case of towns and small islands, if of the 1st and 2nd Declension (sing.) Cp. R. 33.

Obs. 1.—**Domus**, **humus**, and **rus** follow the construction of towns.

Obs. 2.—This construction is a remnant of the obsolete *locative* case, for which see § iv.

Obs. 3.—For the genitive of *price or value*, which is also locative in its origin, see the same section.

Obs. 4.—There are some freer uses of the genitive, rare or poetical, as the gen. of *separation* (a Greek idiom), and the gen. of *definition* (perhaps a *locative*).

Obs. 2.—**Magni sua** putabant interesse potius magno **emi**
quam ut . . . inciderent. (*Cic. Verr.* iii. 42.)

They thought it was more their interest to be bought
for a high price rather than . . . that they should
fall.

R. 20.—Tullia celeriter adolescentem **temeritatis suæ** implet.
(*Liv.* i. 46.)

Tullia rapidly fills the youth with her own recklessness.

Virtus plurimæ exercitationis indiget. (*Cic. Fin.* iii. 15.)
Virtue requires the utmost practice.

Obs. 1.—**Germania fluminibus** abundat :
Germany abounds in rivers.

Voluptate virtus sæpe caret, numquam indiget.

Obs. 2.—**Inops Senatus humani auxilii** ad deos vertit. (*Liv.*)
The Senate wanting human aid turns to the gods.

Homo particeps est rationis et cogitationis. (*Cic.*)

Plenus annis abiit, plenus honoribus. (*Plin.*)

R. 21.—Dionysius **Corinthi** pueros docebat. (*Cic.*)
Dionysius used to teach boys at Corinth.

Obs. 1.—**Vir domi** non solum sed etiam **Romæ** clarus.

Obs. 4.—[**Abstineto irarum calidæque rixæ.** (*Her.*)
Abstain from anger and heating strife.]

[**Sceleris** purus : Free from guilt.]

Animi pendere : To be in anxious suspense.

[**Ævi** maturus : Of mature age. (*Virg.*)]

§ IV.—THE TRUE ABLATIVE.

The fundamental idea expressed by the True Ablative (as indicated by the name) is that of *Removal or Separation* from a place or thing. But in addition to this case, there were two others, at first wholly distinct, both in form and meaning, the *Instrumental* and the *Locative*. As the co-existence of eight cases (in all) caused some confusion, both as to form and meaning, the *Instrumental* Case came to be wholly blended with the Ablative, and the *Locative* partly with the Ablative and partly with the Genitive. Hence:—

R. 22.—The use of the so-called Ablative is threefold:—

- i. **True Ablative.**
- ii. **Instrumental.**
- iii. **Locative.**

Obs.—As each of these was originally a separate case, it will be convenient to consider it in a separate section.

***R. 23.**—The True Ablative is used (*without a preposition*) to express motion from a place only when it is a town or small island.

Obs.—**Domus**, **humus**, and **rus** follow the construction of towns.

***R. 24.**—Verbs and adjectives signifying removal, separation, abstinence, &c., from a thing, take the **Ablative**.

§ IV.—THE TRUE ABLATIVE.

[*So in Greek, out of the same eight cases, as many as THREE were, from similar causes, absorbed in the Genitive and Dative.*]

R. 23.—Demaratus fugit Tarquinios Corintho. (*Cic.*)

Demaratus fled to Tarquinii from Corinth.

Obs.—**Senex heri rure huc advenit.** (*Terence.*)

The old man came hither from the country yesterday.

R. 24.—**L. Brutus civitatem dominatu regio liberavit.** (*Cic.*)

L. Brutus freed the State from the tyranny of kings.

Villicus primus cubitu surgat—**Me murænis abstinebam.**

Robustus animus omni est liber cura. (*Cic.*)

The strong mind is free from all anxiety.

Obs. 1.—They are also used with prepositions governing the Ablative.

Obs. 2.—To this rule perhaps may be referred certain words signifying *deprivation* (as *opus*, *usus est*), which govern the ablative (with dative of the Person), but see R. 28.

R. 25.—In like manner, Particiles signifying origin (as *ortus*, *natus*, *genitus*), take the Ablative.

Obs. 1.—They are also used with the prepositions **ex**, **de**, and **ab**, especially to denote *remote descent*.

Obs. 2.—The Ablative of *Comparison* is probably to be referred to the True Ablative, since, by comparing things in point of size, quality, &c., we thus *mark them off from one another*.

The Rules for the Ablative of Comparison are given in § vii.

Obs. 1.—**Ab oppidis** vim hostium prohibent. (*Cic.*)

They ward off the attacks of the enemy from the towns.

Obs. 2.—**Pane nobis** opus est: We have need of bread.

R. 25.—Jove natus et Maia: Born of Jove and Maia.

Obs. 1.—**Belgæ orti sunt a Germanis.** (*Cæs.*)

The Belgæ are descended from the Germans.

Obs. 2.—**Nihil est otiosa senectute jucundius.** (*Cic.*)

Nothing is more delightful than leisurely old age.

§ V.—THE (INSTRUMENTAL) ABLATIVE.

Obs.—The fundamental idea expressed by the *Instrumental Ablative* is just what the word indicates—the *instrument used in an action*. Connected with this idea is the cognate one of the *means* (or material), from which naturally follow the *manner*, the *cause*, *description* (or quality), and *circumstances* in general. Hence:—

R. 26.—The **Instrumental Ablative** is used to express:—

i. **The Instrument, Means, Material.**

ii. **The Manner.**

iii. **The Cause.**

iv. **Description, or Attendant Circumstances**
(including the *Ablative Absolute*, for which
see § xiv.)

v. **Quality.**

Obs.—As the effect is *got out* of the cause, some excuse is here afforded for the confusion (as regards meaning) of this case with the *true ablative*. However, to one comparing the instrumental case with the genitive, their affinities as to meaning would appear to be still clearer.

***R. 27.**—The **Instrument**, which is viewed as a **thing**, and is expressed by the ablative, must be carefully distinguished from the **agent**, which is viewed as a **living person**, and is never expressed by the ablative alone.

§ V.—THE (INSTRUMENTAL) ABLATIVE.

R. 26.—

i. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Cornibus tauri se tutantur. (Cic.)} \\ \text{Bulls defend themselves with horns.} \end{array} \right.$

ii. $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Ennius fuit major natu: Ennius was older.} \\ \text{Britanni carne et lacte vivunt:} \\ \text{The Britons live on flesh and milk.} \end{array} \right.$

iii. Interitus exercitus ferro, fama, frigore, pestilentia. (Cic.)

iv. Pace tua dixerim: I will say it by your leave.

v. Agesilaus statura fuit humili. (Neph.)
A. was of a low size.

R. 27.—Hostem tormentis et funditoribus terrebat. (Sall. J. 94.)

He proceeded to terrify the enemy by missiles and slingers.

Laudatur ab his, culpatur ab illis. (Hor. Sat. i. 2, 11.)

Obs. 1.—The construction of the *Agent* has been given above, in R. 12, with Obs. 3.

Obs. 2.—Sometimes a *person* is viewed as a *mere instrument* in which case it is rarely expressed by the ablative, and more commonly by *per with the accusative*.

Obs. 3.—To the use of the ablative to express the *instrument* or *means*, refer **fungor**, **utor**, **fruor**, **vescor**, which always govern the ablative.

Obs. 4.—For **Interest** and **Refert** with the *ablative* (*fem. sing.*) of *possessive pronouns*, see R. 19, Obs. 1. The construction is hard to explain, and many grammarians think it a corruption for the accusative.

R. 28.—Many verbs and adjectives signifying fulness and want take an ablative of the means or material (*but see R. 24, Obs. 2*).

Obs. 1.—For the *genitive* after the same class, see R. 20.

Obs. 2.—To the above rule refer **præditus**, **contentus**.

Other adjectives governing the ablative are **dignus**, **indignus**, and **fretus**, the former of which may be an *ablative of price* (see following §), the last partly *instrumental*.

***R. 29.**—The ablative to express manner is used without a preposition, only in two cases:—

i. When the ablative has an attribute.

Obs. 2.—**Sociis navalibus** classis instructa [*sc.* a *Prætore*].
(*Cic. Verr.*)

The fleet was equipped by the help of the naval allies.

Ne pater per me stetisse credat. (*Ter. Andr.*)

Let not my father believe that it came about through my influence.

Obs. 3.—**Hannibal victoria** frui maluit. (*Liv.*)

Hannibal preferred to enjoy his victory.

Lacte vescor: I feed upon milk.

Obs. 4.—**Mea** interest ut relinquas hanc rem :

It is my interest that you leave this matter alone.

R. 28.—**Alio scelere** hoc scelus cumulasti. (*Cic. Cat.* i. 6.)

You have crowned this wrong with another.

Opus eget exercitatione non **parva**. (*Cic. Læl.* 5.)

Huic tradita urbs est nuda **præsidio**, referta **copiis**.
(*Cic. Att.*)

Obs. 2.—**Mens est prædita motu sempiterno.** (*Cic.*)

The mind is endowed with ceaseless motion.

Quam multi luce indigni sunt! (*Sen.*)

R. 29.—

i. **Deos incorrupta mente et voce** venerari. (*Cic. De Nat. De.*)

To worship the gods with undefiled heart and tongue.

ii. When the noun used **itself** signifies manner.

Obs.—Notice that although such a phrase as *apprehensus est cum gladio* is necessarily used to express *manner*, *cum gladio* to express the *instrument* is wholly inadmissible.

R. 30.—After a comparative the **measure of difference** is always expressed by the **ablative of means or manner**.

Obs. 1.—This is not to be confused with the *ablative of comparison*, which is probably a true ablative (R. 27, Obs. 2).

Obs. 2.—Note especially the phrase ‘*the more . . . the more*’ (in which *the* is said to be an old English ablative and distinct from the so-called definite article). The Latin equivalent is *quanto . . . tanto*, or *quo . . . eo*, which are to be used *along with a comparative adjective or adverb*.

R. 31.—The **Ablative of Quality** (like the genitive) is used only when the noun has an attribute: otherwise an **adjective** must be used instead.

Obs.—For the rather doubtful distinction between ablative and genitive of *quality*, see R. 15, Obs. 3.

ii. **Persarum more**: After the manner of the Persians.

(*So ritu, consuetudine, modo, ratione, and some phrases as sponte, fraude, agmine, ordine, auctoritate, which may generally be considered instrumental.*)

Obs.—**Gladio interfectus est**: He was put to death with a sword

R. 30.—**Sol est major multis partibus quam terra.** (*Cic. Acad. ii.*)

The sun is many times larger than the earth

(Compare) **Templum V millibus passuum ab urbe distat.**

Obs. 1.—**Scimus solem multo majorem esse terra.** (*Cic.*)

Obs. 2.—**Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt:**

The more they have the more they want.

Quanto plures erant, tanto major fuit clades.

(See Appendix ii. B., Obs. 2 and 3.)

R. 31.—**Decemviri maxima potestate creati sunt.** (*Cic.*

R. P. ii.)

Decemvirs were appointed with the highest powers;

Or, **potentes, potentissimi** [*but not potestate*].

§ VI.—THE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE (LOCATIVE).

Obs.—The fundamental idea expressed by the (obsolete) *Locative* case was *place* or *position*. The original case-ending was one peculiarly liable to confusion both with the ablative and the genitive. This process was hastened by the fact that the *local* notion of a *fixed point in space* had been extended, by metaphorical use, to embrace those of a *fixed time* and a *fixed amount*, which meanings are plainly cognate to the *descriptive* force of both genitive and (instrumental) ablative. Hence we may safely pronounce:—

R. 32.—The Locative force of the ablative and genitive is threefold; *i.e.*, to express:—

- i. The **Place** (*at which*).
- ii. The **Time** (*at which*).
- iii. The **Amount** (*at which, of value, price, or penalty*).

Obs.—It is therefore convenient to consider together these two cases, in so far as they represent the obsolete case. It will of course be understood that the *locative form* cannot *always* be traced in a given use, since when once the confusion was established, the two other cases would be used to express ideas which ought by strict right to be clothed in a locative form.

***R. 33.**—The **Place** (*where*) is expressed by the ablative (*without preposition*) only if it be a **town** or **small island**, and not of the 1st or 2nd Declension (sing.), cp. R. 21.

Obs. 1.—*Domus, humus, rus* follow the construction of towns

§ VI.—THE ABLATIVE AND GENITIVE (LOCATIVE).

[This case-ending was, both in Latin and Greek, -i. It would be clearly both out of place and impossible in an elementary work to go at length into philological proofs in support of a historical conclusion. However, the beginner may remark the following forms:—In Latin, domi, humi, ruri, Corinthi, Karthagini (later Carthagine), Roma-i (later Romæ), tempori, vesperi, tanti, flocci, &c.; and in Greek, οἴκο-ι, χαμά-ι, Μαραθῶνι, Ἀθήνησι, &c. Some phrases, which look like locatives, as boni facere, and, more probably, lueri facere, may be true genitives.]

R. 33.—**Romæ** Consules, **Athenis** Archontes, **Carthagine** Suffetes quotannis creabantur. (*Nep.*)

At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, were annually elected.

Obs. 1.—Forte evenit ut ruri (*or rure*) essemus. (*Cic.*)
It so happened that we were in the country.

Obs. 2.—The above rule and R. 21 hold good only when there is no attribute (*exc. domi meæ, alienæ, &c.*), and if another noun be in quasi-apposition, it must have its own proper construction.

Obs. 3.—It may prove useful to append a summary of the rules already given for the case of names of **towns** and **small islands**.

- i. To answer the question **WHENCE** use the **ABLATIVE**.
- ii. To answer the question **WHERE** use the **GENITIVE** or **ABLATIVE** (according to the declension and number).
- iii. To answer the question **WHITHER** use the **ACCUSATIVE**.

***R. 34.**—To express **any other Place** (*where*), except a **town** or **small island**, the ablative **cannot** be used without a preposition.

Obs. 1.—Except, however, the ablative of a *noun which has totus* as its attribute.

Obs. 2.—Also except certain *phrases*, as **regione**, **via**, **parte**, **loco** or **locis** (which always have an attribute attached); and note **dextra**, **læva**, **terra** **marique**; also **belli**, **militiæ** (used with **domi**), which are clearly locatives.

[Probably **navi**, **equo**, **currū** are instrumental ablatives.]

R. 35.—The **Time when** is sometimes expressed by the ablative without a preposition, though generally not without an attribute.

Obs. 2.—**In illa domo** vidi fratrem meum.

Patrem-familias **domi** suæ occidere nolumus. (*Cic. Att.* iv. 13.)

Milites Albæ in **urbe opportuna** constiterunt. (*Cic. Phil.* iv. 2.)

The soldiers halted at Alba, a convenient city.

Obs. 3.—

i. *See R. 23.*

ii. *See R. 21 and 33.*

iii. *See R. 2.*

R. 34.—**Hic** status rerum **in Hispania** erat. (*Liv.*)

This was the condition of affairs in Spain.

Obs. 1.—**Totis** trepidatur **castris.** (*Cæs. G.* vi. 37.)

There was consternation throughout the whole camp.

Obs. 2.—Athenienses **loco idoneo** castra fecerunt. (*Nep.*)

The Athenians pitched their camp in a good spot.

Bellum **terra** et **mari** comparat. (*Cic. Att.* x. 4.)

Ego semper plebem **militiae domique** colui. (*Liv.* vii.)

Equo advectus, delapsus est in flumen, eodem **equo** ascendit ripam. (*Cic. Div.*)

R. 35.—**Extrema pueritia** miles fuit summi imperatoris. (*Cic.*)

In his late boyhood he served under a great general.

In adolescentia clarus fuit arte aurigandi. (*Nep.*)

In his youth he was distinguished in the art of driving.

Obs.—Note certain phrases (some of them clearly locatives), **die**, **nocte**, **tempori**, **vesperi**, or **-e** (cf. **heri**), **meridie** (for **medii die**), **pridie**, **quotidie**, &c.

R. 36.—The Time within which is expressed by the ablative, either with or without a preposition.

Obs.—For *duration* of time, expressed as such, see R. 5, ii.

R. 37.—The Length of Time after which is expressed by the ablative followed by **post** (*as an adverb*), or the accusative following **post** (*as a preposition*). Or **post** may be put between the numeral and noun with either construction.

Obs. 1.—The same for *ante* expressing length of time before.

Obs. 2.—Either the cardinal or ordinal number may be used without influencing the construction.

Obs. 3.—**Antequam** and **postquam** may be used with the same constructions, **ante** and **post** being separated from **quam**, which introduces a dependent clause. (For *mood and tense*, see App. iv., 2 and 13.)

R. 38.—The Amount at which a thing is valued is expressed :—

- i. By the genitive; the Price if indefinite also by the
- ii. Genitive; but by the ablative if a stated sum of money.

Obs.—**Nocte** in sua quemque dilabi tecta edoctus. (*Liv.*)

R. 36.—His annis quadringentis, Romæ rex erat? (*Cic.*)

Was there a king at Rome these 400 years?

Decrevere ut **in diebus proximis decem** decederent
(*Sall.*)

They determined to leave within the 10 following days.

R. 37.—Tribus annis post,

Post **tres annos,**

Tribus post annis,

Tres post annos,

} after three years.

Obs. 1.—**Tribus annis ante, &c.** : Three years before.

Obs. 2.—**Tertio anno, post or ante, &c.**

Obs. 3.—Post **tres annos quam** venerat, &c. :

Three years after he had come.

R. 38.—

i. **Judices rempublicam flocci non faciunt.** (*Cic. Fam.*)
The judges do not value the Republic at a farthing.

ii. **Emit hortos tanti, quanti** Pythius voluit :
He bought gardens at the price that the Pythian wished.
Quod non opus est, asse carum est. (*Cic.*)
What you don't want, is dear at any price.

Obs. 1.—Except **magno**, **parvo**, **plurimo**, **minimo**, if of *price*.

Obs. 2.—The forms **tanti**, **quanti**, &c., are true *locatives*; **pluris** and **minoris**, &c., were used by *false analogy* (cp. *corn*, &c., *at so much*). The *price* rather than the *amount of value* was expressed by the ablative, on account of its having partly an instrumental character.

Obs. 3.—The (amount of) the *penalty* and the *charge* are put in the ablative as well as the genitive, probably from the affinity with the *locative* case (see also R. 17).

Obs. 1.—**Non potest parvo res magna constare.** (*Sen.*)
A great thing cannot be bought for a little.

Obs. 3.—**Omne humanum genus morte damnatum est.** (*Sen.*)
The whole human race is condemned to death.
Pecuniæ captæ reum accusaverunt. (*Liv.*)

§ VII.—COMPARISON.

R. 39.—After comparative adjectives and adverbs, the common construction is ‘quam,’ with the same case after as before it.

***R. 40.**—When this case is nominative, instead of ‘quam’ with the nominative, the ablative (*without ‘quam’*) is generally used.

Obs. 1.—The rule holds good for the *accusative*, which represents the nominative in *Oratio Obliqua*, and more rarely for the accusative in general.

Obs. 2.—When the noun after *quam* is *subject to a verb understood*, the nominative must be used.

Obs. 3.—The ablative is rather irregularly used in certain *idiomatic phrases*, as **spe**, **expectatione**, **æquo**, **justo**, **solito**, &c.

R. 41.—The comparative may be used, though there is no real comparison, to express a quality—

- i. In a rather high degree.
- ii. In an excessive degree.

§ VII.—COMPARISON.

R. 39.—*Judicari potest cursum virtutis esse quam ætatis celeriorem.* (*Cic. Phil.*)

It may be judged that the course is swifter of virtue than of age.

R. 40.—*Tullus Hostilius Romulo fuit ferocior.* (*Liv.*)

Tullus Hostilius was braver than Romulus.

(*Here quam Romulus is possible though rare.*)

Obs. 1.—*Brutum minorem esse fama sua etiam admiratores fatentur.* (*Tac.*)

Even his admirers own that Brutus is less than his fame.

Nihil videmus perfectius Phidiæ simulacris. (*Cic. Or. 2.*)

We see nothing more perfect than the likenesses of Phidias.

Obs. 2.—*Neque habet plus sapientiæ quam lapis* [*sc. habet*]. (*Plaut.*)

Nor has he more wisdom than a stone.

Obs. 3.—*Serius spe omnium Romam venit.* (*Liv. xxvi. 26.*)

He came to Rome later than was hoped by all.

Arnus solito magis inundaverat. (*Liv. xxii. 2.*)

The Arnus had overflowed more than usual.

R. 41.—

i. *Senectus est natura loquacior.* (*Cic. de Senect.*)

Old age is naturally rather talkative.

ii. *Voluptas, quum major est, animi lumen extinguit.* (*Cic.*)

Pleasure, when it is too great, quenches the mind's light.

Obs. 1.—To express *too great for*, &c., before a *noun*, use the comparative, followed by **quam pro** with the *ablative*.

Obs. 2.—To express *too great for*, &c., before a *verb*, use the comparative, followed by **quam qui** or **quam ut** with the *subjunctive*.

Obs. 3.—To express *more or less than a certain number*, **plus** or **amplius** and **minus** may be used adverbially, with or without **quam**, and without influence on the case: for distinction between **plus** and **magis**, see App. iv. 9.

R. 42.—Where two qualities belonging to the same person or thing are compared, both must be expressed by the **comparative**.

Obs. 1.—For the *measure of difference* after a comparative *ablative*, see R. 30.

Obs. 2.—See also idioms of the comparative, § xxviii.

Obs. 1.—Prælium atrocius quam pro numero pugnantium editur. (*Liv.* xxii. 29.)

A battle too bloody for the number of the combatants.

Obs. 2.—Damna majora sunt quam quæ æstimari possint. (*Liv.*)

The losses are too great for estimating.

Potentius malum apparuit quam ut sedaretur. (*Liv.* 25 i. 11.)

Obs. 3.—Pictores antiqui non usi sunt plus quam quatror coloribus. (*Cic.*)

(*Here non plus quatror coloribus is equally good.*)

R. 42.—Contio fuit verior quam gratior populo. (*Liv.* xxii. 38.)

The speech was rather true than acceptable to the people.

Obs. 1.—Turres denis pedibus quam murus altiores sunt. (*Curt.*)

The towers are ten feet higher than the wall



§ VIII.—THE PREPOSITIONS.

R. 43.—The following prepositions take **only the ablative** :—

a, cum, e,	absque, de,
pro, præ,	sine, tenus.

Obs. 1.—Cum is put after its case if a personal pronoun.

Obs. 2.—Tenus is always put after its case (and is found *rarely* with the gen.*)

Obs. 3.—Coram, palam, properly adverbs, are sometimes used as prepositions with the abl.

R. 44.—In, sub, super, subter, take the **ablative**, except when expressing motion (*whither*), in which case they take the **accusative** (cp. R. 1, i.)

Obs. 1.—Subter with accusative is rare.

Obs. 2.—Super and subter are also used as *adverbs*.

Obs. 3.—Clam, properly an *adverb*, is sometimes used as a preposition, with both cases indifferently.

R. 45.—All other prepositions take **only the accusative**.

* Not necessarily the gen. plural, though this is frequently stated

§ VIII.—THE PREPOSITIONS.

R. 43.—**Opera pro pecunia:** Work for money.

Obs. 1.—**Mecum, vobiscum, secum.**

Obs. 2.—**Sed hæc hactenus:** But this so far.

Coreyra tenus ab Ætolia. (*Liv.* xxvi. 24.)

Obs. 3.—**Mihi coram genero meo quæ dicere ausis es?** (*Cic Pis.* 6.)

What have you dared to say to me before my son-in-law?

R. 44.—**Certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse.** (*Cæs.* i. 21.)

Learning that the enemy had taken a position close under the hill.

Progredivuntur et sub montem succedunt. (*Cæs.* i. 45.)

They advance and arrive close under the hill.

Obs. 1.—**Subter murum hostium ad cohortes avehitur.** (*Liv.* xxiv. 20.)

Obs. 2.—**Satis superque prudentes.** (*Cic.*)

Clam matrem suam. (*Plautus*).

[Clam vobis. (*Cæsar*).]

R. 45.—**Propter frigora frumenta matura non erant.** (*Cæs.* i. 16.)

On account of the cold the corn was not ripe.

Obs. 1.—**Versus** and **Penes** are sometimes put *after their case*.

Obs. 2.—The following prepositions are frequently used as *adverbs* :—**Circum**, **Circa**, **Juxta**, **Contra**, **Infra**, **Supra**, **Intra**, **Extra**, **Versus**, **Adversus**, **Prope**, **Ante**, **Post**; and **Circiter** is always an adverb, except before a numeral.

Obs. 3.—**Circum** is more precise than **circa**, and means *all round*.

Obs. 4.—**Circiter** is used as a preposition with numerals or expressions of time.

Obs. 5.—For idiomatic phrases with prepositions, see § xxviii. E.

Obs. 1.—**Cum Brundisium versus ires.** (*Cic. Fam.*)

Obs. 2.—**Tribus ante annis:** Three years before.

In ipso tempore **prope a meis aedibus sedebas.** (*Cic. Pis. II.*)

At that time you were sitting near my house.

Obs. 3.—**Terra circum axem se summa celeritate convertit.**
(*Cic. Ac. ii. 39.*)

The earth whirls with the greatest rapidity all around
its axis.

Obs. 4.—**Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos aberat.**
(*Cæs. i.*)

Circiter meridiem. (*Cæs.*)

Circiter Idus Maias. (*Cic.*)

§ IX.—THE PRONOUNS.

R. 46.—The Demonstrative Pronouns **hic**, **iste**, **ille**, are used with reference to the **first**, **second**, and **third persons** respectively.

Obs. 1.—Hence **hic**, **ille** are often contrasted, and refer to (i) the *nearer*—the *more remote*, (ii.) the *latter*—the *former*; or (iii.) the *above* (= **ille**) the *following* (= **hic**).

Obs. 2.—**Ille** often indicates *celebrity*, both in a good and a bad sense; **iste** is used sometimes of an opponent in court, sometimes to imply *contempt*.

Obs. 3.—Adverbs derived from the above follow their signification.

R. 47.—The Determinative Pronoun ‘**is**’ does not possess any demonstrative force, but simply refers to something determined by the context.

Obs. 1.—Hence a most frequent use of **is** as antecedent to a *determining* (or *restrictive*) relative, in which case the antecedent is said to be *indefinite*. The demonstratives also can each be used as antecedent, but always referring to something specially pointed out by the force of the pronoun, so that the relative clause is used quite differently, *i.e.* (not restricting the extent of the antecedent, but), adding some new information about it, like a clause with a conjunction.

§ IX.—THE PRONOUNS.

R. 46.—**Hanc** urbem, **hoc** biennio consul evertes. (*Cic.*)

Tu istis faucibus, **istis** lateribus, &c. (*Cic. Phil.* ii. 25.)

P. Scipio non multum **ille** quidem sed Latine loquendo cuivis erat par. (*Cic. Brut.* 34.)

Obs. 1.—

i. **Hoc illud** est, **haec illa** est misericordia. (*Ter. Andr.*)
(**Hoc**, this of which I am speaking now; **illud**, that spoken of before).

ii. and iii. **Scitum** est **illud** Catonis melius inimicos mereri quam amicos, **illos** verum sæpe dicere, **nos** nunquam. (*Cic. Læl.* 24.)

Obs. 2.—**Magnus ille** Alexander—**Medea illa** profugisse dicitur: The great Alexander—The infamous Medea is said to have fled.

Iste vir optimus: That excellent man (*ironical*).

Animi est **ista** mollitia, non virtus. (*Cæs.*)

Obs. 3.—**Accede huc**, come hither—**usque istinc** exaudiri, to be heard as far as you.

R. 47.—**P. Asinius** mortuus est. **Is** quum haberet unicam filiam, **eam** heredem instituit. (*Cic.*)

Obs. 1.—**Ego is** sum, **qui** nihil unquam mea causa fecerim. (*Cic. Fam.* v. 21.)

I am one who have done nothing for my own benefit. (*Here is is indefinite, but is defined by qui . . . fecerim, whereas ille qui feci would mean that particular person (that you know of), and moreover I have done, &c. Similarly compare Casu accidit ut id, quod audierat nuntiaret.* (*Cir. Rosc.* 34.)—It

Obs. 2.—As **Relative Pronouns** properly belong to the **complex sentence**, they cannot be fully treated here, but the student should note R. 96, Obs. 2, Appendix ii., and the **Idioms of the Pronouns**, § xxviii. F.

***R. 48.** The **Reflexive Pronoun** **sui** (**suus**) is used only referring to the subject of the sentence.

Obs. 1.—Hence it has no nominative of its own, and **ipse** (which may perhaps be said to supply the place of one) can stand for either the subject or object.

Obs. 2.—Sometimes the *logical* rather than the *grammatical* subject has to be considered.

Obs. 3.—**Quisque** is frequently used in close connexion with **sui** (**suus**).

Obs. 4.—For use of **Reflexives** in O. O., see § xxvii.

***R. 49.**—The English Pronoun ‘**any**’ must be translated:—

- i. By **quivis** (**quilibet**), where all are included.
- ii. By **quisquam** (*adjective* **ullus**), where all are excluded.
- iii. By **aliquis**, where ‘**any**’ is equivalent to ‘**some**.’
- iv. By **quis**, after **ne**, **nisi**, **si**, and **num**.

happened by chance that he reported what he had heard, *with Hoc, quod* omnes **admittunt**, tu recusas **admittere**?—Do you refuse to admit this (special point), although all **admit** it?

R. 48.—Incidit in eandem invidiam quam pater **suus** :
He fell into the same odium as his father had.

Obs. 1.—Non ego medicina: **me ipse** consolor. (*Cic. Læl.*)
I want not a remedy: I console myself.
(*Note that me ipsum consolor would mean 'I do not console anyone else.'*)

Obs. 2.—Hannibalem **sui** cives e civitate eiecerunt :
Hannibal was driven out of the state by his fellow-citizens.
[*Here the statement is chiefly about Hannibal.*]

Obs. 3.—Trahit **sua quemque** voluptas :
Everyone is urged on by his own desires.

R. 49.—

- i. **Anyone** may go: **Licet cuiuslibet** ire.
- ii. It is not lawful for **anyone** to go:
Non licet cuiquam ire.
- iii. **Anyone** may desire to go: **Forsitan aliquis** velit ire.
- iv. He asks if **anyone** would like to go:
Rogat num quis velit ire.

Obs. 1.—**Quisquam** (*ullus*), are therefore practically to be used only *after negatives*, or *interrogatives which are equivalent to negatives*.

Obs. 2.—**Quisquam** is *without feminine*, and *without plural*; otherwise it is declined like **quis** (*indefinite*).

Obs. 3.—**Quispiam** (*rare*) is much the same as **aliquis**.

Obs. 4.—**Nullus** (*like ullus*) is properly an *adjective*, but its *gen.* and *abl.* are used instead of the obsolete *neminis* and *nemine*.

R. 50.—‘**One**,’ in the sense of a *certain one*, must be translated by **quidam**—likewise ‘**a**’ in the same sense.

Obs. 1.—*One*, in the sense of the French ‘*on*’ is (i.) **nos**, or **omnes**, or **se**, if at all translated. However (ii.), frequently it is left untranslated. One can never be translated by **unus** except (iii.) in the sense of *only one*.

Obs. 2.—For *one another* (*alius*), *the one*, *the other* (*alter*). See next rule—also see *Idioms of the Pronouns*, § xxviii.

R. 51.—Distinguish :—

i. Alii , others.	Ceteri , the others, the rest.
ii. Alius , one or other,	Alter , one or other.
iii. Quisque , each,	Uterque , each,
iv. Quis , which,	Uter , which,

v. **Nostrum**, of us, after partitives, and with **omnium**.

Nostri, of us, in all other cases.

Obs.—**Nostri** is not a true genitive plural, but *gen. sing.* of the possessive, with ellipse of a noun.

vi. **Nonnemo**, someone; **nonnumquam**, sometimes, &c.

Nemo non, everyone; **nunquam non**, always, &c.

Obs. 1.—Who would think that anyone would like to go?
Quis credit **quemquam** velle ire?

Obs. 3.—Dixerit **quispiam**: Anyone might say.

Obs. 4.—It is not lawful for any citizen to go:
 Non licet civem **ullum** ire.

R. 50.—**One** of my slaves, }
 A slave of mine, } **Servus quidam meus.**

Obs. 1.—

- (i.) **One** hopes to live happy:
Nos (or) omnes speramus feliciter vivere.
One should go oneself: **Melius est ire seipsum.**
- (ii.) **One** must obey: **Parendum est**—**one** would think:
Crederis.
- (iii.) **One** survived the battle: **Unus e pugna superfuit.**

R. 51.—

- ii. They (all) accused one } **Alii** **alios accusaverunt.**
 another, } **Alius** **alium accusavit.**
One affirmed it, the other denied it:
Alter dixit, alter negavit.
- v. The greater part of us: **Pars major nostrum.**
 For our sake: **nostri** causâ—**nostrum omnium** causâ
 (**nostri, sc., negotii or beneficii, &c.**)
- vi. **Nonnemo fecit:** Someone did it—**nemo non fecit:**
 Everyone did it.

§ X.—THE TENSES.

R. 52.—In Latin the Present is used to represent an English Past Tense:—

i. Frequently in **vivid narration.** (**Historic Present.**)

ii. With **jam pridem, jam dudum**, to express what has been going on up to the present.

iii. With **dum**, meaning ‘**while.**’

Obs. 1.—In like manner the *imperfect* will often represent the *English pluperfect*.

Obs. 2.—It is important to note that the *so-called present infinitive* is in reality equivalent to the *imperfect* as well as the *present indicative*. (Further rules for the tenses of the infinitive are given in the next section, and in the one on *Oratio Obliqua*.)

R. 53.—The use of the *imperfect* is threefold; *i.e.*, to express:—

i. **Continued action.**

ii. **Habitual action.** (**Frequentative.**)

iii. **The commencement of action.** (**Inceptive.**)

§ X.—THE TENSES.

R. 52.—

- i. **Jubet** omnes proferre quod haberent. (*Cic. Verr.*)
He ordered all to bring forth what they had.
- ii. **Cupio** equidem et **jampridem** **cupio** Alexandriam visere. (*Cic. Att.*)
I for my part desire and have long desired to visit Alexandria.
- iii. **Dum ea** Romani parant, **jam** Saguntum summa vi oppugnabatur. (*Liv. xxi.*)
While the Romans were making these preparations, already the attack upon Saguntum was commenced with great vigour.

Obs. 1.—**Jam pridem cupiebam**: I had been long desiring.

Obs. 2.—**Scio te dicere verum**:

I know that you are speaking the truth—*equivalent to dicis.*

Sciebam te dicere verum:

I knew that you were speaking the truth—*equivalent to dicebas.* (See R. 63, with Obs., and R. 106, with preceding Observation.)

R. 53.--

- i. **Ita stertebat** ut vicinus audirem. (*Cic.*)
He was snoring so hard.
- ii. **Archias audiebatur** a M. Æmilio. (*Cic.*)
A used to be heard.
- iii. **Agmen expediebat** se ad prælium. (*Liv. xxi.*)
The army proceeded to form.

R. 54.—The **Perfect** is used, not only (as implied by its name) (i.) to express **completed action**, but also (ii.) in place of an **aorist**, which is, unfortunately, **wanting in Latin**.

Obs. 1.—The importance of this rule will be seen better when applied to the rules for the subjunctive in the complex sentence.

Obs. 2.—The *perfect infinitive* stands for the *pluperfect*, as well as the *perfect indicative*.

***R. 55.**—The use of (i.) the **Future**, depending on another future, is much more exact than in English, and care must be had to use (ii.) the **Future Perfect** when required by the sense.

Obs.—Though the application of this rule generally exceeds the *strict limits* of the *simple sentence*, it has seemed convenient to subjoin here some examples which point the contrast between Latin and English in the matter of *tense*.

R. 54.—

(i.) Jampridem **conticuerunt** litteræ tuæ. (*Cic. Brut.* 5.)
For a long time your letters have ceased.

(ii.) L. Lucullus per multos annos Asiæ provinciæ **præfuit**:
L. Lucullus governed the Province of Asia for many years.

Obs. 1.—*See especially R. 83, 84, with Observations.*

Obs. 2.—**Scio te dixisse verum**:

I know that you have spoken (**dixisti**).

Sciebam te dixisse verum:

I knew that you had spoken (**dixeras**).

R. 55.—

(i.) **Naturam si sequemur ducem, numquam aberrabimus**:
If we follow nature as our guide, we shall never go astray.

Ea velim, cum poteris, invisas. (*Cic. Att.*)
I wish you to look into these things, when you can.
(N.B.—*Velim invisas* is equivalent to a future.)

(ii.) **Quid facient, cum dederunt illi quod poposcerit?**
(*Cic. Verr.* iii. 11.)
What will they do, when they have given him what he has asked?

Actio recta non erit, nisi recta fuerit voluntas. (*Sen.*)
The action will not be right, unless the will is right.

De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognovero. (*Cic.*)
I shall not cease to have fears about Carthage, till I learn that she is utterly destroyed.

§ XI.—THE PASSIVE VOICE.

R. 56.—The use of the Passive Voice is less frequent in Latin than in English (*but compare R. 66, Obs. 2*).

Obs.—This may be attributed to the fact that in a Latin sentence the order of words is variable, so that the same construction admits of more than one emphasis.

***R. 57.**—The Passive is formed by taking as subject the **Direct object** of the active; hence, in the case of **Intransitive verbs**, it can only be used in the **Impersonal construction**.

Obs. 1.—In a few cases (chiefly *gerundives* and *passive participles*) this *impersonal* construction is used instead of the English active voice.

Obs. 2.—When verbs of *stating* and *thinking* are used in the passive, the *personal* is preferred to the impersonal construction. The same applies to verbs of *seeming*.

§ XI.—THE PASSIVE VOICE.

R. 56.—

Hannibalem sui cives e civitate ejecerunt :
Hannibal was driven from his country by his fellow-citizens.

Civem Romanum in crucem egisti. (*Cic. Verr.*)
A Roman citizen was crucified by you.

[*We could, indeed, say : 'It was a Roman citizen that you crucified,' but the mode of speech is often very cumbrous.*] .

R. 57.—

(*Active*) mihi isti nocere non possunt ;
(*Passive*) mihi ab istis noceri non potest. (*Cic.*)
I cannot be injured by them.

[*Note.—Ego ab istis noceri non possum is inadmissible.*]

Mihi quidem persuaderi numquam potuit animos emori. (*Cic. Sen. 22.*)

Obs. 1.—Resistendum senectuti est : we must resist old age.

Conclamatum 'ad arma,' concursumque in portas est. (*Liv. vi.*)

They shouted 'to arms,' and rushed to the gates.

So itur, curritur, ventum est, pugnatur, &c.

Obs. 2.—Ex hoc di beati esse intelliguntur. (*Cic. de nat. de. i. 38.*)

From this it is understood that the gods are blessed.

Videntur hæc esse paulo faciliora. (*Cic. Att.*)

It seems that these things are somewhat easier.

R. 58.—From verbs that take a **Double Accusative** (*in the active*, R. 4), the Passive can be formed only by taking as subject the accusative of the Person.

Obs. 1.—The *accusative of the thing* may of course be retained in the passive voice.

Obs. 2.—For the *Medial* use of the Passive (*i.e.*, with a so-called *Greek Accusative*), see *R. 3*.

Obs. 3.—For the construction of the *agent* after passive verbs, see *R. 12*, Obs. 3, and *R. 27*.

Obs. 4.—For the *future infin. pass.*, see following section.

R. 58.—Scito primum **me** non esse rogatum **sententiam**. (*Cic.*
Att. i. 13.)

Know that I was not the first to be asked any opinion.

[Here the *active* form would be (in *Oratio Recta*) **non** **rogaverunt** **me** **primum** **sententiam**, and the form **scito** **sententiam** **non** **esse** **me** **primum** **rogatam** would be inadmissible.]

§ XII.—THE INFINITIVE.

R. 59.—The Infinitive is properly a **verbal noun**, but it can have this force only as the **subject of a sentence**, and **without any attribute**.

Obs. 1.—The *oblique* cases of the infinitive as a verbal noun are supplied by the gerunds, see § xv.

Obs. 2.—However, the infinitive may also be put in the *accusative* case, when used, in *Oratio Obliqua*, to represent the nominative.

R. 60.—The **Accusative and Infinitive** is used :—

- i. **Always** after verbs of **stating and thinking**.
- ii. **Sometimes** after verbs expressing **certain emotions of the mind**.
- iii. **Sometimes** after **certain impersonal verbs**.

Obs. 1.—Clauses with ‘ut’ and ‘quod’ can *never* be admitted after verbs of *stating*, &c., but generally can in all other cases.

Obs. 2.—Note that *Purpose* is *never* expressed in Latin Prose by the Infinitive. Also the following (though admitting some exceptions, as **jubeo, veto, moneo, conor**) is a useful catch :—

With *ask, command, advise, and strive*,
By ‘ut’ translate Infinitive.

§ XII.—THE INFINITIVE.

R. 59.—*Facinus est vincire civem Romanum.* (*Cic. Verr.*)
It is a crime to put a Roman citizen in chains.

Obs. I.—Mens ducitur delectatione videndi.

Inter spoliandum corpus hostis percutitur.

Obs: 2.—**Mori** nemo sapiens miserum dixerit:
No wise man will say that it is wretched to die.

R. 60.—

- i. **Sentit animus se moveri.** (*Cic.*)—Dixit se Romam venturum esse.
- ii. **Placuit Crassum Syriam obtinere.** Vocari Crispinum jussit. (*Liv.*)
Gaudeo te valere—Miror te nihil ad me scribere.
- iii. **Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est**—sequitur te in hoc errare (*so expedit, justum est, manifestum est, restat, &c.*)

Obs. 1.— **Gaudeo quod vales — miror ut nihil ad me scribas.**

Ut hoc flat oportet—sequitur ut in hoc erres.

[*But sentit quod se movet—Dixit ut venturus sit are inadmissible.*]

Obs. 2.—Pecor ut me adjuves: I ask you to help me.

Imperat militibus ut cursum teneant
Jubet milites cursum tenere { He orders the
soldiers to keep
their course.

R. 61.—The **Infinitive** without accusative may be used after :—

- i. Verbs expressing **wish, aim, or intention.**
- ii. Verbs of **beginning, continuing, and ending.**
- iii. A few other verbs, as **possum, debedo, soleo.**

Obs. 1.—In such cases the *predicate* after the infinitive may be *nominative*, provided it refers to the *subject of the principal verb*.

Obs. 2.—The *Historic Infinitive*, used to lend *vividness* to a narration, may be used (like an indicative) after the nominative.

Obs. 3.—The **Infinitive** is used (chiefly in poetry) in *exclamations*, probably owing to the ellipse of some verb.

Obs. 4.—There is another use of the infinitive (chiefly after adjectives), called *explanatory* or *prolative*. It is rare even in poetry, the prose use being a *gerundial* or *supine*.

***R. 62.**—The **Present Infinitive** (i.) is always to be used after verbs signifying power, necessity, &c., and the **Future** (ii.) generally after verbs of intending, hoping, and promising.

R. 61.—

- i. Tua virtute **frui** cupimus—Ea non aggrediar narrare.
(*Liv.*)
- ii. Illud jam **mirari** desino—Marcellus vestigiis institit sequi. (*Liv.*)
- iii. Hoc non potest **fieri**—Solitus est vesperi **ambulare**.

Obs. 1.—Fieri studebam **doctior**. (*Cic. Læl.*)

I strove to become more learned.

Homerus solus **poeta** appellari meritus est.

Obs. 2.—Barbari tamen nihil remittere, atque acrius **instare**.
(*Sali. J.* 101.)

Yet the barbarians in no way slacken their efforts, and press on the more actively.

Obs. 3.—At te Romæ non **fore**! (*Cic. Att.*) Mene **desistere** victam! (*Virg.*)

Obs. 4.—[Soli **cantare** periti] *for* in **cantando**, *or* **cantandi**.
[Audax **perpeti**] *for* ad **patiendum**.

R. 62.—

(i.) Quos ferro **trucidari** oportebat, eos nondum voce vulnero (*Cic. Cat.* i. 4.)

Those who ought to have been slain with the sword,
I do not as yet wound with my words.

(ii.) Illi, quo vellem, **descensuros** pollicebantur. (*Cic. Verr.* i.)

They promised to descend wherever I wished.

Speravit se veniam **impetraturum** esse;
He hoped to obtain pardon.

Obs. 1.—Note that the English Idiom, in referring to past time, is to put the verb of *power* or *necessity* in what might be the present tense, and the verb depending on it in the *perfect infinitive*.

Obs. 2.—As the *future infinitive active* is formed from the *participle in -urus*, which is wanting to some verbs, its place is often supplied by the *future infinitive* of *esse* (*futurum esse*, or *fore*), followed by an *-ut* clause.

Obs. 3.—The same applies to the *future infinitive passive* of those verbs that have no supine, and in other cases this *periphrastic* form *may* be used, sometimes with a slightly different shade of meaning.

Obs. 1.—*So* Hoc fieri potest: This could (might) be done.

Hoc fieri potuit:
This could (might) have been done.

Licuit illi me adiuvare: He could have helped me.

They ought to have considered:
Debent cōgitare.

Obs. 2.—Spero fore ut contingat id nobis. (*Cic.*)
I hope this will fall to our lot.

Puto fore ut hæc cognoscantur:
I think that this will be known.

Obs. 3.—Spero fore ut urbs capiatur:
I hope that the city is about to be taken.

Spero urbem captum iri:
I hope that the city will be taken.

§ XIII.—THE PARTICIPLE.

*R. 63.—The Participle, which is a **verbal adjective** (*i.e.*, a *verb used partly like an adjective*), is frequently used where in English we prefer a separate clause.

Obs. 1.—This holds good especially with reference to the *perfect passive*, and to a great extent the *future active*. The clause may be either *subordinate* or *co-ordinate*, and in the latter case the vigour and terseness so obtained is very characteristic of Latin, and cannot be too well borne in mind.

Obs. 2.—With regard to the *English* idiom, it is well to note that even many *seeming participles* (which correspond to Latin ones) are in reality *verbal nouns*.

*R. 64.—But the **Present Participle** (*especially in the nom. sing.*) is limited to the expression of time, and that, too, which is strictly simultaneous with the principal action.

Obs. 1.—In English, on the other hand, we use the present particle not only to express (i.) *cause, manner, &c.*, but also very loosely to express (ii.) *time which may in reality be present, past, or future, in view of the principal action*.

§ XIII.—THE PARTICIPLE.

R. 63.—*Captivos vinctos in medio statuit.* (*Liv.*)

He bound the prisoners, and set them in the midst.

Interroganti quidnam novi esset, respondit . . .

When I asked him what news there was, he replied . . .

Pietas victa jacet: Piety is conquered and lies low.

Hæc locutus sublimis abiit:

He said this and went on high.

Obs. 1.—**Morituri** te salutant:

Those who are about to die salute thee.

Obs. 2.—**Obsequens** adolescentibus, me senem esse oblitus sum. (*Cic.*)

While giving attention to the young, I have forgotten that I am old.

[‘Giving’ is not a participle, but shortened for ‘in giving,’ ‘a-giving.’ Therefore, **dum obsequor** may be substituted, but **dum obsequens** is inadmissible.]

R. 64.—Plato uno et octogesimo anno scribens est mortuus.

(*Cic. Sen.* 5.)

Plato in his 81st year died in the very act of writing.

Obs. 1.—He, **denying** (*i.e.*, though denying) that there is a war, has stripped you of arms:

Hic, negando bella esse, arma vobis ademit. (*Liv. iii. 19.*)

[Here, though some expression, like **propterea quod negaverit**, or **quippe qui negaverit**, might be

Obs. 2.—The *oblique* cases of the pres. partic. may be used more freely, and are often used to denote a class instead of a relative clause. But *never* can the participle be combined with a pronoun (as in English) to express a class.

R. 65.—Perfect Participles are always passive, except those of depouents, which frequently are indifferent, and a few others which are active only.

Obs. 1.—The most important of the last mentioned are **solitus, gavisus, sisus, ausus, osus, juratus, nupta.** Such participles are frequently used in a *present* signification, or *without any reference to time.*

Obs. 2.—It has been remarked (R. 56) that the Passive Voice is less frequent in Latin than in English, but, owing to the want of an *active past participle*, the passive one is called into great requisition, and the next section will show how it is turned to very good account. However, the place of a *perf. partic. active* is also very frequently supplied by the use of *cum* with the *subjunctive* mood.

R. 66.—The Future Participle (active) in -urus is used with two meanings:—

i. **About to do, or likely to do a thing.**

ii. **intending or purposing to do it.**

Obs. 1.—For the *periphrastic* construction with **futurus**, see R. 63, Obs. 1.

Obs. 2.—The participle is frequently used as a *true adjective*, and is then capable of comparison. It also takes the construction of the adjective, as distinct from the *participle proper.*

substituted, negans would have a completely different meaning.]

(ii.) **Going** to Rome, I saw, shall see, Cæsar :

Romam **cum** ivissem, **ubi** ivero, Cæsarem videbam,
videbo.

Obs. 2.—Nihil difficile **amanti** puto. (*Cic.*)

I think nothing difficult to one loving.

De **absentibus** nil nisi bonum (*or very commonly de eis qui absunt, but never de eis absentibus*).

R. 65.—**Amatus** : loved ; **adeptus** : having attained, or being attained ; **veritus** : having feared, or fearing ; **juratus** : having sworn ; **nupta** : married.

Obs. 2.—**Having said** these things : **Hæc locutus** ; *but* having done these things : **His factis**, *or cum hæc fecisset*.

[*Also Post hæc facta, and Postquam hæc fecit.*]

R. 66.—

i. **Panem date homini perituro** :
Give bread to a perishing man.

ii. **Ad Jovem pergit, consulturus de origine sua** :
He went to Jove's oracle, to enquire about his birth.

Obs. 2.—**Sapientissimus quisque — prudentior — appetentes gloriæ — patiens laboris atque frigoris.**

Obs. 3.—The participle in certain phrases takes the place of a *substantive*, most commonly in the *neuter plural*.

Obs. 4.—Frequently participles are expressed in Latin where they are merely implied in English.

Obs. 3.—*Opus est consulto et, ubi consulueris, mature facto.* (*Sall.*)

There is need of deliberation, and after you have deliberated, prompt action. *So præclare facta, Plebiscita, constanter dicta.*

Obs. 4.—*Impetus in Milonem factus:* The attack on Milo.

§ XIV.—THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

*R. 67.—A participle may agree with a noun which has no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, and both will be put in the **Ablative case**.

Obs.—This construction, which is commonly called the *Ablative Absolute*, is in reality an ablative of *description*, or *attendant circumstances*.

*R. 68.—By grammatical connection is meant **apposition** with the **subject, object, or any other word** of the sentence.

Obs. 1.—As the *past partic. active* is generally wanting in Latin, its place is often supplied by the *ablative absolute* of the *passive* past partic. (See R. 65, Obs. 2.)

Obs. 2.—The Ablative Absolute, like the participle in general, can express, not only *time*, but *manner*, *cause*, and *condition*. (See R. 64, Obs. 1.) Therefore, a clause can usually be substituted, which will be either co-ordinate or subordinate.

R. 69.—The **Present Participle** and the **Past Participle** (*passive*) may alone be used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 1.—The use with the *future partic.* and gerundive is too rare to be imitated.

§ XIV.—THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

R. 67.—**Hæc dicente consule,** equites circumfunduntur. (*Liv.* x. 36.)

While the consul says this, the cavalry pour around.

His **rebus cognitis,** Cæsar ad naves revertitur. (*Cæs.*) Having discovered these things, Cæsar returns to the ships.

Obs.—**Nil desperandum est, Teucro duce et auspice Teucro :**
There is no reason for despair, with Teucer as our leader, and Teucer for our auspices.

R. 68.—(This statement is illustrated by all examples of the ablative absolute.)

Obs. 1.—**Having said** these things: **Hæc locutus,** abiit.

Having done these things: **His factis,** abiit.

Obs. 2.—**Time**—(See R. 67, 1st and 2nd examples):

Dum hæc dicit, cum hæc cognovisset; *or,*
Cæsar hæc **cognovit**, et ad naves revertitur.

Cause—(See R. 67, Obs.): **Quia** Teucer dux est, &c.

Condition—**Reluctante natura,** irritus labor est—*si*
reluctatur natura:

If nature rebels, labour is in vain.

R. 69.—

Obs. 1.—[**Antiochus erat securus, tanquam non transituris in**
Asiam Romanis. (*Liv.*)]

Obs. 2.—However, frequently the participle is omitted, and a *noun with an adjective*, or *two nouns* are used instead, owing, no doubt, to the absence of a present participle of the verb *sum*.

Obs. 3.—Contrariwise, the subject of the participle may be (i.) *omitted* in certain expressions, as **audito**, **consulto**, **intellecto**, **comperto**, &c., or (ii.) *supplied* by a clause.

Obs. 2.—See R. 67, Obs.

Obs. 3.—

(i.) Nec **auspicato** nec **libato** instruunt aciem. (*Liv.* v. 38.)

Without taking the auspices, or pouring libations, they draw up the forces.

(ii.) Progressus est, nondum **comperito** quam regionem hostes petiisent. (*Liv.* xxxi. 39.)

He advanced, not yet having discovered the direction taken by the enemy.

§ XV.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

Obs.—The Gerund, like the Infinitive, is a *verbal noun*, and the Gerundive, like the Participle, a *verbal adjective*; i.e., though they have the regular declension of nouns, they are qualified by adverbs, and govern (at least the gerund) the same cases as verbs. It is probable that the *gerund* is the older form, and that the *gerundive* was derived from it by a double process of attraction. First, the gerund *attracted its object to its own case*, and secondly, this attracted object reacted on the gerund, *giving to it its own gender and number*.

Thus we may in some degree account for:—

R. 70.—The Gerundive (*because it is a passive form*) cannot be derived from intransitive verbs, but the gerund must be used; while transitive verbs (*used as such*) always prefer the gerundive to the gerund.

Obs. 1.—Of course ordinary *Deponents* can form a gerundive.

Obs. 2.—However, the *gerund of transitive verbs* is rather common in the *genitive*, especially to avoid ambiguity, or for the sake of euphony. Thus with **sui** (plural), **vestri**, **nostri**, the gerund is always used.

Obs. 3.—The case of **fruor**, **fungor**, **glorior**, **potior**, **vescor**, is peculiar. As they are not true transitives, they may use *gerunds*, while they also form *gerundives* on account of their quasi-direct object.

§ XV.—THE GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

Obs.—Tanta consensio fuit **libertatem vindicandi**.

Tanta consensio fuit **libertatis vindicandi**.

Tanta consensio fuit **libertatis vindicandæ**. (*Cæs.*
G. vii.)

R. 70.—**Fugiendum** est de civitate, aut omnia quæcunque fecerit inimicus, **ferenda**. (*Quinct.*)

You must go as an exile from your country, or endure whatever your enemy may inflict.

Dandus est locus fortunæ, **cedendum** ex Italia. (*Cic.*
Fam.)

I must give place to fortune, I must retire from Italy.

Obs. 1.—Consul ad milites **incitandos hortandosque** versus.
(*Liv.* xxv.)

The Consul turned to rousing and exhorting the troops.

Obs. 2.—**Principia et agendi** aliquid et **diligendi** aliquos in nobis continemus. (*Cic. Fin.*)

We contain in ourselves the principles both of doing something and of loving others.

Purgandi sui causâ :
For the sake of excusing themselves.

Obs. 3.—**Suo cuique judicio u'endum** est. (*Cic.*)
Each must use his own judgment.

Non paranda solum sed **fruenda** sapientia. (*Cic.*)
We must not only acquire, but enjoy wisdom.

R. 71.—The gerund and gerundive alike, when used (i.) in the nominative, signify **duty or necessity**; (ii.) in the oblique cases they simply **express the action of the verb**.

Obs. 1.—In *Oratio Obliqua* the *accusative* represents the nominative, without change of meaning.

Obs. 2.—The reason for the different meaning expressed by the nominative is that the ordinary nominative was *supplied by the present infinitive* (*R. 59, Obs. 1*), and the nominative of the gerund was thus left free to acquire a new meaning. So in English, the idea of *duty or necessity* has grown up round the simple expression '*I have to do something*.'

Obs. 3.—The same notion of *duty or necessity* can be expressed, *but less idiomatically*, by verbs, as **debeo, oportet**.

Obs. 4.—The gerund and gerundive are used commonly in the *accusative* after **ad**, less commonly in the *accusative* after **inter** and **ob**, and in the *ablative* after **in**.

Obs. 5.—For the Dative of the agent after the gerund and gerundive, see *R. 12*, and for Idioms of the gerundive, see § xxviii. K.

R. 71.—

- (i.) See R. 70, *Examples (Gerund and Gerundive)*.
- (ii.) See R. 70, Obs. 2 (*Gerund*), and Obs. 1 (*Gerundive*).

Obs. 1.—**Dixit dandum esse locum fortunæ.**

Obs. 2.—So **facere** means 'doing,' **faciendi**, 'of doing,' **inter faciendum**, 'while doing,' *but faciendum est*, 'it must be done.'

Obs. 3.—**Fugiendum est, debeo fugere, oportet fugias.**

Obs. 4.—**Aqua ad bibendum—inter bibendum :** While drinking.
Ego quoque in **accusando** operam consumerem. (*Cic.*)
I too should spend my time in accusing.

§ XVI.—WISHES, COMMANDS, PROHIBITIONS.

R. 72.—Wishes are expressed by:—

- i. **Utinam** with the **Subjunctive**.
- ii. The **Subjunctive** alone (called **Optative**).

Obs. 1.—**Si**, or **o si** with the *subjunctive* is rarely used, and in poetry.

Obs. 2.—*Vegative wishes* are expressed by **ne**, or **utinam ne** with the subjunctive.

R. 73.—If the Wish is **capable of fulfilment**, (i.) a **Primary** tense must be used, and if (ii.) **incapable of fulfilment**, a **Historic** tense.

Obs. 1.—The *Primary* tenses are the *present and perfect*, the *Historic* tenses the *imperfect and pluperfect*.

Obs. 2.—There is no clear distinction between the *present and the perfect* (when used in wishes); the *pluperfect* can only be used of *past time*, the *imperfect* of either *present* or *past* (if continuous).

R. 74.—Commands in the 1st and 3rd persons are usually expressed by the **Subjunctive**.

§ XVI.—WISHES, COMMANDS,
PROHIBITIONS.

R. 72.—

- i. Utinam ipse Varro **incubat** in causam. (*Cic. Att.*)
May Varro himself give his efforts to the cause.
- ii. Quod bonum felix faustumque **sit**:
May it turn out good, fortunate, and lucky.

Obs. 1.—[**O si** angulus ille proximus **accedat**. (*Hor. Sat.*)]

Obs. 2.—**Ne sim** salvus, si aliter scribo ac sentio. (*Cic. Att.*)
May I perish, if I write otherwise than I feel.

R. 73.—

- (i.) *See last Rule throughout.*
- (ii.) Utinam ego tertius vobis amicus **ascriberer**. (*Cic. Tusc.*)

Would that I were counted with you as a third friend.

Utinam ut culpam sic etiam suspicionem vitare
potuissem:

Would that I could have avoided, &c.

Obs. 2.—(*In the last example but one, ascriberer refers to the present time, but it could also mean 'would that I had been counted for a length of time.'*)

R. 74.—**Amemus** patriam, **pareamus** senatui, **consulamus** bonis. (*Cic. Sest.*)

Let us love our country, obey the senate, consult for the good.

‘**Aut bibat**’ inquit [lex], ‘**aut abeat**.’ (*Cic. Tusc.*)

‘Let him drink or leave’ says the law.

Obs. 1.—This is called the *Jussive* Subjunctive, and when it is used in a merely Rhetorical way, it is named *Concessive*.

Obs. 2.—When the sense is *deprecatory* or *preventive*, *ne*, *neve* (sometimes *neque*) must be used.

R. 75.—Commands in the 2nd person may be expressed:—

- i. By the imperative.
- ii. By various phrases, as *fac ut*, *cura ut*, or *velim*, with the Subjunctive.
- iii. (*Rarely*) by the future indicative.

Obs.—The *present subjunctive* may be used in *general maxims*, not in commands addressed to a particular person.

***R. 76.**—Negative Commands or Prohibitions are most generally expressed by (i.) *noli* with the infinitive, but (ii.) *ne* with the perfect subjunctive may also be used.

Obs. 1.—*Cave (ne)* with the *subjunctive* occurs rather often.

Obs. 2.—The *Imperative* cannot be used at all, and *ne* with the *present subjunctive* only in *general maxims*. (See Obs. to last Rule.)

Obs. 1.—**Sit ita sane:** Grant that it is so.

Obs. 2.—**Ne quid rei tibi sit cum Saguntinis.** (*Liv. xxi. 44.*)

Let there be no dealings between you and the Saguntines.

R. 75.—

i. **Sed nunc agite: id quod rogabo dicite.** (*Plant.*)
But come now: say what I shall ask you.

ii. **Hoc velim mihi ignoscas:**
I hope you will pardon me this.

iii. **Si quid acciderit, facies ut sciam.** (*Cic. Fam.*)
If anything happens, see that I know of it.

Obs.—**Isto bono utare, dum adsit; cum absit, ne requiras.**
(*Cic. Sen.*)

Use that good, if you have it; if not, do without.

R. 76.—

(i.) **Nolite pati regnum Numidiæ tabescere.** (*Sall. i. 14.*)
Do not allow the kingdom of Numidia to decay.

(ii.) **Ne transieris Iberum.** (*Liv. xxi. 44.*)
Do not cross the Ebro.

Obs. 1.—**Cave putas quicquam homines magis unquam mirari.**
(*Cic. Att.*)

Beware of thinking that persons ever wonder at anything more.

Obs. 2.—See R. 75, Obs.

§ XVII.—DIRECT QUESTIONS (INCLUDING DELIBERATIVE).

R. 77.—Ordinary Direct Questions are expressed by the indicative, and, when not expecting a particular answer, may be introduced :—

- i. By an **interrogative pronoun** or **adverb**.
- ii. By the **particle** **an** (*rarely*) **utrum**, or by **-ne** (*attached as an enclitic to the emphatic word*).
- iii. Simply **without any interrogative word**.

Obs.—The adverb **tandem** is sometimes used to *emphasise* an interrogation.

R. 78.—Questions expecting the answer ‘yes’ are introduced by the **particle** **nonne**.

Obs.—Affirmative answers are **ita**, **etiam**, but much more frequently a *repetition* of some word used in the question occurs, and strengthened by **vero** or **quidem**.

R. 79.—Questions expecting the answer ‘no’ are introduced by the **particle** **num**.

Obs.—Negative answers are **minime**, **nequaquam**, but the repetition of a word with **minime** or **non** is more common.

R. 80.—In alternative questions (*direct*) the first member is generally by (i.) **utrum**, (ii.) **-ne**, or (*if expecting ‘no’*) (iii.) **num**, the second member by **an**.

§ XVII.—DIRECT QUESTIONS (INCLUDING
DELIBERATIVE).

R. 77.—

i. **Quousque** tandem Catilina, abutere patientia nostra ?
(*Cic. Cat.*)

How long, Catilina, will you abuse our patience?

ii. **Estisne** legati missi a populo Collatino ? (*Liv.*)
Are you ambassadors sent from the Collatine people?

iii. **Hunc** tu morem ignorabas ? (*Cic.*)
Were you ignorant of this custom?

Obs.—See i., *supra*.

R. 78.—**Quid?** Canis **nonne** similis lupo ? (*Cic. de Nat. De.*)
What? Is not a dog like to a wolf? [Yes.]

Obs.—Dasne aut manere animas aut interire ? **Bo** vero.
(*Cic. Tusc.*)
Do you grant that souls either remain or perish ? I do.

R. 79.—**Num** igitur peccamus ? **Minime** nos quidem. (*Cic.*
Att. viii. 9.)

R. 80.—

(i.) **Utrum** ea vestra **an** nostra culpa est ? (*Cic.*)
Is that your fault or ours?

Obs. 1.—However, the particle with the first member may be omitted.

Obs. 2.—Notice that *vel* and *aut* are inadmissible to introduce a member of an alternative question or *Disjunctive*.

Obs. 3.—When the second member is a simple negative, an *non* is the common form for direct questions.

R. 81.—The Subjunctive is used in direct questions to imply deliberation.

Obs. 1.—This is the **Deliberative Subjunctive**, sometimes called *Subjunctive of Doubt*.

Obs. 2.—The tense is usually *present*, rarely *imperfect*, if referring to past time.

END OF PART THE FIRST.

(ii.) **Sed isne est quem quæro an non?** (*Ter.*)
But is this the one I seek or not?

(iii.) **Num tu intelligis hunc hominem, an non?** (*Ter.*)
Do you understand this man or not?

Obs. 1—**Recte an secus feci?** tu dicis:
Have I done well or otherwise? say.

Obs. 3.—See (ii.) and (iii.)

R. 81.—**Quid plura enumerem?** **Quo me vertam?**
Why should I say more? Where am I to turn?

Obs. 2.—**Quid facerem?** What was I to do?

END OF PART THE FIRST.

Part the Second.

THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

§ XVIII.—SEQUENCE OF TENSE.

Obs.—Sequence of Tense is a law of Latin Syntax regulating the tense of *Dependent Subjunctives* by the *sort of tense of the Indicative Mood* on which they depend. The principle deserves much attention, as one that, although quite simple, is of the utmost importance. Owing to the frequent use of the Subjunctive, especially in dependent clauses, examples of Sequence are of constant and all but unvarying occurrence.

*R. 82.—The Present and Perfect Subjunctive are used solely after Primary, the Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive solely after Historic tenses.

Obs. 1.—The *Imperfect* Subjunctive, representing the *Present* and *Imperfect*; and the *Pluperfect*, representing the *Perfect* and *Pluperfect*.

Obs. 2.—A *Primary* tense is one that has strict reference to the *Present*; a *Historic*, strict reference to time *Past*. Therefore, a glance at R. 54 will show that the *so-called Perfect* is included in both classes, according (i.) as it is used as a *True Perfect* (i.e., to

§ XVIII.—SEQUENCE OF TENSE.

R. 82.—**Magna proponit iis, qui regem occiderint præmia.**
 (Cæs. v. 58.)

He promises great rewards to those who should slay
 the king

Iis qui primi muros ascendissent, præmia proposuit.
 (Cæs. vii. 27.)

He promised rewards to those who should first scale
 the walls.

Obs. 2.—

(i.) Atticus **fecit** ut illud vere dictum **videatur.** (Cic.)

Atticus has brought it about that that appears a true
 saying.

express what is *now complete*), or (ii.) in place of an *Aorist*. Hence the following :—

***R. 83.**—The Present, Future, and (True) Perfect are Primary tenses, while the Imperfect, Pluperfect, and (Aorist) Perfect are Historic tenses.

Obs. 1.—A practical rule for distinguishing the (*True*) Perfect from the (*Aorist*) Perfect is that the former is generally represented in English by ‘*I have done*.’

Obs. 2.—In process of time even the Romans confused the two meanings of the Perfect, and used sometimes to write *Historic Sequence* after the True Perfect.

R. 84.—When a Present or Future Infinitive intervenes between the principal and dependent verbs, the Sequence is still referred to the principal verb, but a Perfect Infinitive takes its own Sequence (*according to its nature*).

Obs. 1.—There is no fixed rule for the Sequence after a *Historic Present*, as it may be naturally referred to both constructions; but the *Historic Sequence* is more common.

Obs. 2.—There is an important exception to the Law of Sequence as it occurs in clauses of *Result* (§ xxii.), viz.:—the *Perfect Subjunctive* after a Historic tense is used instead of the Imperfect to emphasize the Result as an *actual fact* rather than as a mere natural consequence (compare in Greek the use of $\omega\sigma\tau\epsilon$ with the indicative).

Obs. 3.—The *Perfect Subjunctive*, after a Historic tense, is used contrary to the Law of Sequence, in the so-called *Periphrastic* conjugation, which is formed with the future partic. in *-urus*. (For the Sequence in *Hypothetical Clauses*, see § xxiv.)

(ii.) **Ante senectutem curavi ut bene viverem.** (*Cic.*)
Before my old age I took care to live well.

R. 83.—

Rogo,	} Quis sit,	I ask,	} Who it is.
Rogabo,			
Rogavi (<i>perf.</i>),	} Quis fuerit,	{ I will ask, I have asked,	} Who it was.
Rogabam,			
Rogaveram,	} Quis esset,	I used to ask.	} Who it was.
Rogavi (<i>aor.</i>),			
	Quis fuisset,	{ Ih ad ask, I asked,	Who it had been.

Obs. 2.—**Adduxi** hominem in quo satisfacere nationibus **posse-**
tis. (*Cic. Verr.* i. 2.)

I have brought one into court in whose person you can
satisfy the nations.

R. 84.—**Puto** te scire quid agam :

I think you know what I am doing.

Putabam te auditurum esse quid agerem :

I thought you would hear what I was doing.

Puto te **scivisse** quid agerem :

I think you know what I was doing.

Puto me satis **docuisse** quid agam :

I think I have sufficiently told you what I am doing.

Obs. 1.—**Navarchos** vocari jubet qui nihil **metuerent** . . .
statim **occurrunt.** (*Cic. Verr.* v. 41.)

Eis, ut absentem Heracliam **condemnant, imperat.**
(*Id. ii.* 17.)

Obs. 3.—**Non erat** dubium quin terga **daturi** hostes **fuerint.**
(*Id. iv.* 38.)

There was no doubt that the enemy would take to flight.

§ XIX.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS (INCLUDING DELIBERATIVE).

Obs.—Indirect Questions are simply *Dependent Clauses*, which, if expressed in an independent form, would be ordinary direct questions in the indicative mood. The word on which they depend is usually a verb of *asking*, *examining*, *knowing*, or *doubting*. They may be called also *quoted* questions.

*R. 85.—Indirect questions are always in the subjunctive mood; they may be introduced :—

- i. By an interrogative pronoun or adverb.
- ii. By an interrogative particle, **utrum**, **num**, **-ne**.
- iii. (*Rarely*) without any introductory word.

Obs. 1.—Notice that **num** is often used *without any negative force* in indirect questions (however, it should always be used where such force is required).

Obs. 2.—After **nescio**, and phrases like **incertum est**, use **an**, to imply the probability of a clause.

Obs. 3.—Although the indicative can never be used in an indirect question, occasionally a *direct* question, as being more animated, is substituted. However, the indicative is used after **nescio quis**, **nescio quomodo**, &c., as these expressions were considered, through frequent use, to be mere indefinite pronouns or adverbs.

Obs. 4.—In some cases the mood is the sole distinction between an *indirect question* and a *relative clause*, the meanings of which are widely different.

§ XIX.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS (INCLUDING DELIBERATIVE).

R. 85.—

- i. Quid metuis? **Quid** ego metuam rogitas? (*Plaut.*)
- ii. Quæritur utrum hoc sit verum relatum?

Obs. 1.—Quæstio difficultis num quando amici novi veteribus sint antiponendi. (*Cic.*)

The difficult question whether new friends are ever to be preferred to old.

Obs. 2.—**Haud scio** an hoc verum sit: I rather think this is true

Obs. 3.—Dic, quæso, num te illa **terrent**, Cerberus . . . ?
(*Cic. Tusc.* i. 5.)

Tell me, I pray, surely those things do not terrify you, Cerberus . . . ?

Minime assentior illis qui **nescio** quam indolentiam **laudant**. (*Cic. Tusc.* iii. 6.)

I by no means agree with those who praise a sort of laziness.

Obs. 4.—**Scio** quantum tu **scias**:

I know the amount of your knowledge.

Scio quantum tu **scis**:

I know the same amount as you do.

R. 86.—Alternative questions (*indirect*), the first member is introduced by *utrum*, *num*, or *-ne*, the second member by *an*.

Obs. 1.—However, the particle may be omitted with the first member, and then the second member is introduced by *-ne*.

Obs. 2.—When the second member is a simple negative, *necne* is the common form for indirect questions.

R. 87.—The **Deliberative Subjunctive** occasionally depends on a verb expressed, and can then only be recognised by the context.

Obs.—Of course, in all indirect questions, whether ordinary or deliberative, the Law of Sequence is to be faithfully observed.

R. 86.—Non refert **utrum sit** aureum poculum an vitreum
Taceamne an prædicem nescio.

Obs. 1.— Dubitat verum falsumne **sit**.

Obs. 2.—Dii utrum sint, **necne**, quæritur :
It is asked whether the gods exist, **or not**.

R. 87.—Nesciebam quid **facerem** :
I did not know what I should do [*direct form, quid faciam?*]

But Nesciebam quid faceret :
I did not know what he was doing [*direct form, quid facit?*]

§ XX.—THE OBLIQUE SUBJUNCTIVE.

Obs.—By the above heading is meant the use of the Subjunctive simply to express *subordination*. Some beginners fall into a mistake about the Subjunctive Mood, which the name renders very natural, viz.:—that properly all *dependent clauses*, and *none others*, ought to be in this mood. A reference to the Tabular View (Appendix iii.) will show that this is quite wrong. However, in the last Section it has been stated that all *questions* which are dependent must be in the subjunctive, and it is thought convenient here to show how far this principle is to be extended to other clauses. As *Oratio Obliqua* is treated below in three separate sections, it is not intended here to discuss it fully.

R. 88.—The **Subjunctive** mood is required in all clauses which are **really dependent on the Infinitive or Subjunctive**.

Obs.—As all principal sentences of *Oratio Obliqua* are expressed by the *infinitive*, the above rule may be made to account for the Subjunctive in Questions, Commands, and Dependent Clauses of *Oratio Obliqua*.

R. 89.—However, both in *Oratio Obliqua* and in many other cases, the **Indicative** is frequently used in clauses that appear to be grammatically dependent upon the Infinitive or Subjunctive.

Obs. 1.—This construction is generally found in short *defining* clauses with relative pronoun or adverb, and clauses introduced by *dum*, meaning *while* (whatever be their dependence), sometimes retain the *present indicative*.

§ XX.—THE OBLIQUE SUBJUNCTIVE.

R. 88.—Socrates dixit omnes, in eo quod scirent, esse eloquentes. *(Cic.)*

Socrates said that all are eloquent in speaking of that which they know.

Rex imperavit ut, quæ bello opus essent, pararentur.

Obs.—*See R. 106, 107.*

R. 89.—Apud Hypanim fluvium, qui ab Europæ parte in Pontum influit, Aristoteles ait bestias nasci, quæ unum diem vivant. *(Cic. Tusc. i. 39.)*

(Here the clause qui . . . influit inserted by the speaker, not being found in Aristotle, cannot be said really to depend on the infinitive--compare quæ . . . vivant.)

Obs. 1.—Eum, qui palam est adversarius, facile vitare possis. *(Cic. Verr.)*

Ego omnibus, unde petitur, hoc consilii dederim. *(Cic. Fam. vii. 11.)*

I would give this advice to all by whom it is asked

R. 90.—The subjunctive frequently occurs after **quod** (*sometimes quia*) in dependence on an infinitive which is not expressed, but contained virtually in another word.

Obs. 1.—Hence the construction is called *virtually oblique* (or *suboblique*), and the reason given by **quod** with the subjunctive is called a *quoted*, as distinct from a *stated* reason, expressed by **quod**, **quia** with the indicative.

Obs. 2.—By a carelessness of expression, the *verb of saying* is sometimes put in the subjunctive after **quod**, instead of *what is said* or *quoted*.

Dic hospes nos te hic **vidisse** jacentes dum legibus
obsequimur:

Say, stranger, that you have seen us lying here, while
we obey the laws.

R. 90. Laudat Africanum quod fuerit abstinentis. (*Cic. Off.*)

He praises Africanus **on the ground that he was**
abstemious.

(*Laudat* is equivalent to *ait se laudare.*)

Obs. 1.—Laudat Africanus **quod (quia) admiratus est** virtutem
eius *would mean* because he actually admired.

Obs. 2.—Rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum esse aliquid **diceret.**
(*Cic. de Off.* i. 13.)

He returned soon after, because he had as he said
forgotten something.

(*Put for quod oblitus esset.*)

§ XXI.—THE FINAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

R. 91.—The Final Subjunctive (*i.e.*, to express Purpose) is used in the following ways:—

- i. **Ut** with Subjunctive.
- ii. **Qui** with Subjunctive.
- iii. **Quo**, nearly always followed by comparative, with Subjunctive.
- iv. **Ne, nendum, ut ne, quin, quominus**, with Subjunctive (*called Purpose of Prevention*).
- v. **Dum, dummodo, donec, priusquam**, with Subjunctive, expressing not mere time, but also **some degree of purpose**.

Obs. 1.—When *purpose* is to be expressed, **ut** cannot be used with **non, nemo, nunquam, &c.**, but use instead **ne, ne quis, ne quando, &c.** This is called the **Prohibitive** use of **ne**. *Cf. R. 95, ii.*

Obs. 2.—The last construction, which it is of much importance to distinguish from mere *temporal* clauses, may perhaps be called a *quasi-temporal* subjunctive. **Dum** and **dummodo**, when translated by *provided that*, may be called *conditional* rather than *final*.

Obs. 3.—The Subjunctive after verbs of *fearing* may be called *final*, because when we fear an event, we in some way *wish* or *purpose* that it may not happen. Hence the following:—

* **R. 92.**—After verbs of fearing, use **ne** with Subjunctive to express a fear that something will happen—**ut** with Subjunctive to express a fear that it will not.

§ XXI.—THE FINAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

R. 91.—

He sent ambassadors to ask peace.

- i. Legatos misit **ut** pacem **peterent.**
- ii. Legatos misit **qui** pacem **peterent.**
- iii. Legatos misit (cum pecunia) **quo (facilius)** pacem **peterent.**
- iv. Legatos misit **ne (quominus)** pax recuperaretur.
Non prohibuit **quin** legati **mitterentur.**
- v. Pax servanda est **dum** legati **veniant:**
Peace is to be preserved until the ambassadors arrive.

Obs. 1.—Cæsarem obsecravit **ne quid** gravius in fratrem statueret. (*Cic.*)

He besought Cæsar not to determine anything severe against his brother.

Obs. 2.—*Compare* pax servata est **dum** legati **absunt.** (In this case mere time is expressed, without any purposed connection between the **dum** clause and the principal sentence.)

Oderint **dum metuant:**
Let them hate provided they fear.

R. 92.—Timeo **ne veniat:** I fear that he will come.

Timeo **ut veniat:** I fear that he will not come.

Obs. 1.—So **caveo**, to *take care*, takes *ut* if the action is *desired*, and takes (or omits) *ne* if it is *to be avoided*.

Obs. 2.—**Quin** and **quominus** are used after verbs of *hindrance* or *prohibition*—the former only after a negative. A further distinction between them is that *quin* expresses *consequence* as well as *purpose*, *quominus* only *purpose*.

R. 93.—Further constructions for expressing Purpose in Latin are:—

- vi. The future participle (in *-urus*).
- vii. The supine in *-um*, after verb of motion.
- viii. The gerund and gerundive, with *ad*.
- ix. The gerund and gerundive, with *causâ*.

Obs. 1.—For distinction between the use of the *gerund* and the *gerundive*, see R. 71, with Obsns.

Obs. 1.—**Cave ut facias**: Take care to do it.

Cave (ne) facias: Take care not to do it.

Obs. 2.—**Non prohibuit quin mitterentur**.

(Non) prohibuit quominus mitterentur.

[Non dubitavit quin hoc verum esset.]

See also App. iv. 17.

R. 93.—

vi. Legatos misit pacem **petituros**.

vii. Legati iverunt pacem **petitum**.

viii. Legatos misit (**ad colloquendum et**) ad pacem **petendam**.

ix. Legatos misit (**colloquendi et**) pacis **petendæ causæ**.

§ XXII.—THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

R. 94.—The Consecutive Subjunctive, which expresses the Result of an action or a quality, is introduced:—

- i. If **affirmative** (*like final clause*), by **ut**, **qui**, **quia**.
- ii. If **negative**, by **ut non**, **ut nemo**, **ut numquam**, &c.

Obs. 1. The use of **qui** with **subjunctive** is often more elegant than that of **ut** in both final and consecutive clauses.

Obs. 2. For the use of **quin**, which is a compound of **qui** or **qui** (abl.) with a negative—see R. 92, Obs. 2, and App. iv. 17.

R. 95.—The following classes of words are frequently followed by a consecutive clause (*as a sort of complement*) :—

- i. **Ita**, **sic**, **tam**, **tantum**, **toties**, &c.
- ii. **Is**, **talis**, **tantus**, **tot**, **ejusmodi**, &c.
- iii. **Primus**, **ultimus**, **nemo**, **multi**, **unus**, &c.
- iv. **Quam**, after a comparative.
- v. **Dignus**, **indignus**, **idoneus**, **aptus**.

Ob. 1. It may be supposed that with some of these words, as with the last class, **ita** is understood. It may have various

§ XXII.—THE CONSECUTIVE SUBJUNCTIVE.

R. 94.—

- i. Temperantia efficit **ut** appetitiones rationi pareant. (*Cic.*)
- ii. Confectus est vulneribus, **ut** jam se sustinere **non posset**. (*Cæs.*)

Obs. 1.—Innocentia est talis effectio **quæ noceat** nemini. (*Cic.*
Tusc. iii. 8.)

Innocence is such a quality as to injure no one.

Obs. 2.—Nullus est Ephesi **quin** [= **qui non**] **sciat**. (*Plaut.*)

R. 95.—

- i. Tarquinius **sic** Servium diligebat, **ut** is haberetur filius. (*Liv.*)
- ii. **Is** sun **qui** illud faciam. *See also Obs. 1 of the last Rule.*
- iii. Hæc est **una** contentio **quæ permanerit**. *See also Obs. 2 of the last Rule.*
- iv. Sunt **majora** delicta **qui** quibus ignosci possit.
- v. Nulla videbatur **aprior** persona **quæ** de Senectute **loqueretur**.

Obs. 1.—**Ita** laudo **ut** non pertimescam :

Although I praise, yet I do not fear.

meanings, as “*in such a way*,” “*on such condition*,” “*with the exception*,” &c.

Obs. 2. It is very important to notice that the prenominal words mentioned above are only followed by a *consecutive* subjunctive when they refer to what is *indefinite*. A relative clause with *definite antecedent*, and which describes an *existing and certain* individual, or class, is properly expressed by the *indicative* mood. This is sometimes (and rather well) expressed by saying that **qui**, *when it means ejusmodi qui*, takes the subjunctive.

Obs. 3.—The Subjunctive after **sunt qui**, and like phrases (in which the antecedent, though *indefinite*, is suppressed), is called *generic*.

Obs. 4.—For the Perfect Subjunctive, used contrary to the Law of Sequence, to express an *actual* result, see R. 84, Obs. 2.

R. 96. A subjunctive mood with ‘*ut*’ is commonly used as the complement of an abstract noun, or of a neuter pronoun (*either expressed or understood*).

Obs. 1.—This is called an *Explanatory* Subjunctive, because it *explains* fully the meaning of the noun or neuter pronoun.

Obs. 2.—It is very common after **restat**, **reliquum est**, **constat**, **tantum abest**, **in eo erat**, &c.

Obs. 3.—It can very frequently be substituted by the *present infinitive*, or by **quod** with the *indicative*.

Quis velit **ut** non diligit quemquam vivere?

Who would wish to live on the condition of loving no one?

Obs. 2.—Sunt **multi** qui eripiunt aliis **quod** aliis largiantur.
(*Cic. de Off.* i. 14.)

There are many who extort from some what they may distribute to others.

(*Here multi in some way defines the antecedent.*)
Compare—

Sunt qui discessum animi a corpore putent esse mortem. (*Cic. Tusc.* i. 9.)

Some (quite indefinite) think that the separation of the soul from the body is death.

Comp. also Qui videat hæc:

The man (*in general*) who sees this; *and—*

Qui videt hæc: The particular man who sees this.

R. 96.—**Beneficium** est naturæ **ut** omnibus necesse sit mori:
It is a benefit of nature that all have to die.

Sæpe fit (*hoc*) **ut** ii qui debent non respondeant ad tempus. (*Cic. Att.*)

It often happens that they who ought do not reply in time.

Obs. 2.—Tantum (*hoc*) abest **ut** nostra miremur, ut nobis non satisfaciat Demosthenes. (*Cic.*)

(*N.B.—The second ut clause is consecutive on tantum.*)

Obs. 3.—*Thus in the first example it would be equally good to say: omnes necesse esse mori; or, quod omnes necesse est mori.*



§ XXIII.—THE CAUSAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

R. 97.—The subjunctive mood has a **causal** sense

- i. After **cum**, meaning ‘since’ or ‘because’
- ii. After **qui** (especially when strengthened by the particles **quippe**, **ut**, or **utpote**).

Obs.—Very rarely the indicative is found (i.) to put strong emphasis on the *actual occurrence* of the fact; and (ii.) regularly after verbs of *emotion*, both **cum** and **quod** are used with the indicative.

***R. 98.**—**Quod** and (*sometimes quia*), meaning **because**, take the subjunctive

- i. When preceded by a negative.
- ii. When giving a quoted reason.

Obs. 1.—For this last construction, called *virtually oblique*, and for the idiom *quod diceret*, see R. 91, Obs. 1 and 2.

Obs. 2.—**Quod** and **quia** in other cases, and **quoniam** **quandoquidem**, &c., take the Indicative, except in *Oratio Obliqua*.

Obs. 3.—**Cum**, and **qui** also, when used in an *adversative* or *concessive* sense (*i.e.*, meaning *although*, *notwithstanding that*), take the subjunctive.

§. XXIII.—THE CAUSAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

R. 97.—

- i. Quæ cum ita sint: and since these things are so.
- ii. Peccasse mihi videor (quippe) qui a te **discesserim**.
(*Cic. Fam.* xvi. 1):
I seem to myself to have committed a crime in leaving
you.

Obs. (i.) Habeo senectuti gratiam quæ aviditatem cibi et potio-
nis **sustulit**. (*Cic. Sen.*)

(ii.) Gratulor tibi cum tantum **vales** apud Dolabellam.
(*Cic. Fam.* 17.)
(**Quod vales** also quite common, see *App.* iv. 15, *ad. fin.*)

R. 98.—

- i. Pugiles ingemescunt, **non quod doleant** sed quia
corpus **intenditur**. (*Cic. Tusc.*)
- ii. Laudat Africanum **quod fuerit** abstiens. (*Cic. Off.*)
He praises Africanus as being abstemious.

Obs. 2.—(See last example but one.)

Obs. 3.—Pylades **cum sis**, dices te esse Oresten? (*Cic. de fin.* ii. 24.)
Though you are Pylades, will you say that you are
Orestes?

*R. 99.—**Cum** meaning ‘when’ takes the subjunctive (only imperfect and pluperfect) when the clause contains some circumstance (*not necessarily a cause*) in the sequence of events.

Obs. 1.—This is generally called ‘cum Historic,’ and can be usually best rendered in English by the *present* and *perfect* *participles* respectively.

*R. 100.—If, on the other hand, **cum** meaning ‘when’ is used solely to define the time of the principal sentence, it takes the indicative (rarely imperfect or pluperfect).

Obs. 1.—These rules are best understood by practice: however it may be noticed that when the indicative is used (i) an antecedent to **cum** is expressed or easily supplied, and (ii.) the **cum** clause more often follows the principal sentence.

Obs. 2.—There is yet another use of ‘**cum** temporal,’ in which it is practically a co-ordinate conjunction, being equivalent to **et tum**. It is called the *inverted* use of **cum**, and occurs in animated passages.

Obs. 3.—For the construction of other *temporal* conjunctions see App. iv., 2 and 13.

Non paruisti quæstor tribuno plebis, **cui** collega tuus pareret. (*Cic. Fam. xv.*)

You did not as quæstor obey the tribune of the plebs, although your colleague obeyed him.

R. 99.—Zenonem, **cum** Athenis **essem**, audiebam. (*Cic. de. Nat. De. i. 21.*)

Being at Athens, I used to listen to Zeno.

Cum Athenis decem dies **fuissem**, inde proficiscebar. (*Cic. Fam.*)

Having been ten days at Athens, I was on the point of leaving.

R. 100.—Ego idem sum qui fui **cum tu** mecum societatem **pepigi**sti. (*Liv.*)

I am the same man that I was when you pledged to me your alliance.

(Here **qui tum fui**, that I was at that time, *is natural.*)

Cum Placentiam consul **venit**, **jam** et stativis movera Hannibal. (*ib. xxi.*)

(Here **cum** answers to **jam**.)

Obs. 2.—Hannibal subibat muros, **cum** repente in eum erumpunt Romani. (*Liv. xxix. 7.*)

§ XXIV.—THE HYPOTHETICAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

Obs.—The Hypothetical sentence consists of two parts, (i.) the *Protasis*, *i.e.*, supposition or condition, and (ii.) the *Apodosis*, *i.e.*, the consequence or inference drawn from the supposition. The *Protasis*, introduced by *si* (*nisi*, *etsi*, &c.) is of course a *dependent* clause, and the *Apodosis* is, grammatically considered, an *independent* sentence. However, as the character of the whole sentence essentially depends upon the sort of supposition which is made, and as this is most clearly indicated by the *mood*, and (in certain cases) the *tenor* of the *Protasis*, these afford the best means of classifying the forms of the Hypothetical sentence. (It is only when the *Protasis* is not normally *expressed*, but is either (i.) *implied* in a Participle or Relative clause, or else is (ii.) *suppressed* altogether, that we must decide the character of the sentence by the mood, and sometimes the tense, of the *Apodosis*). We shall therefore distinguish *three* sorts of suppositions as absolutely distinct:—

- i. Suppositions *representing something as an actual FACT*.
- ii. Suppositions *representing something as a POSSIBILITY*
- iii. Suppositions *representing something as an IMPOSSIBILITY, i.e.,*

something which is under the circumstances of the case, but not necessarily in itself, impossible (called also *non-fact*).

Obs. 2.—Some grammarians separate *two sorts of Possibilities* as absolutely distinct. They are probably misled by the analogy of Greek Syntax: at any rate the point is doubtful in Latin: hence our principal rule is as follows:—

*R. 101.—The chief forms of the Hypothetical sentence are:—

- i. The **Indicative** to express suppositions as **Facts**.

§. XXIV.—THE HYPOTHETICAL SUBJUNCTIVE.

Obs.—(i.) **Si hoc dicis** (erras) : If you say this (you are wrong).
 (ii.) (Si hoc dicis) erras : (If you say this) you are wrong.
 (*For nisi, see App. iv. 18.*)

(i.) **Uno prælio victus** [= **si uno prælio victus esset.** (*Liv.*)]
 Conquered in one battle, he would have been conquered
 in the whole war.

(ii.) **Nihil faciendum statuit Consul. Quid enim profuisset?** [*i.e.*, **si fecisset** aliquid].
 The Consul determined to do nothing, for what good
 would it have done [*i.e.*, if he had done anything].

- i. **If I am telling the truth,** } you ought to believe
If I have told the truth, } me.
- ii. **If this should happen to be me,** I should be sorry.
- iii. **If I were speaking falsely,** } I should deserve punishment.
If I had spoken falsely, } me.

R. 101.—

- i. **Si dico** verum, } debes mihi credere.
Si dixi verum, } debes mihi credere.

- ii. The Primary Subjunctive to express suppositions as Possibilities.
- iii. The Historic Subjunctive to express suppositions as Impossibilities.

Obs. 2.—The *Indicative* admits any tense according to the time expressed: the two *Primary* tenses of the subjunctive (the *Present* and the *Perfect*) both refer more or less to *future* time, with hardly a shade of difference between their meaning.

Obs. 3.—The *Historic* tenses of the Subjunctive (the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect*) are both used of *past* time, and the *Imperfect* also of *present* time. When used of *past* time the *Imperfect* retains its true meaning of a *prolonged* action. Compare R. 74, Obs. 2.

Obs. 4.—When there is an *alternative* protasis, **sin** (*but if*), **si minus** (*but if not*), or **sive** (*seu*) . . . **sive** (*seu*) (*whether . . . or*), are frequently used with the *indicative*, rarely with the *subjunctive*. The last construction is to be carefully distinguished from **utrum . . . an** (*whether . . . or*). See R. 86.

R. 102.—Clauses with **etsi**, **etiam si** (*and other compounds of si*) are used in a **concessive** sense, but are subject to the above rule as particular cases of the Protasis.

Obs. 1.—Among other forms of the *concessive* clause, those with **quamvis** and **licet** usually are in the *subjunctive*, those with **quoniam** in the *indicative* (see also R. 98, Obs. 3).

ii. Si $\left\{ \begin{matrix} \text{sit} \\ \text{fuerit} \end{matrix} \right\}$ verum, doleam, doluerim.

iii. Si **dicerem** falsum, } mererer pœnam.
Si **dixissem** falsum, }

Obs. 3.—*Thus si dicerem falsum, may also mean, 'If I had continued to speak falsely.'*

Obs. 4.—Pacem Sulla **sive faciebat sive simulabat**, non erat desperandum fore statum tolerabilem. (*Cic. Phil.*)

Whether Sulla was **really** making peace, or only pretending, there was no reason for despairing that the state of things would be endurable.

Si mihi veniam dederit, utar conditione; **si** minus impetrabo. (*Cic. Att. ix. 15.*)

Sive me amat **sive** odit, idem est mihi:

Whether he loves **or** hates me, it is quite the same.
[Condition.]

Utrum me amet **an** oderit, incertum est:

Whether he loves **or** hates me, is uncertain.
[Question.]

R. 102.—**Etsi** priore födere staretur—satis cautum erat de Saguntinis. (*Liv.*)

Although the former treaty were adhered to—yet sufficient security had been taken for the Saguntines.

Obs. 1.—**Quamvis** magna sit exspectatio, tamen eam vinces. (*Cic.*)

Though there is great expectation, yet you will overcome it.

Obs. 2.—Some of the above conjunctions are also used merely to *qualify words*, in which case they do not influence the Syntax. *Quanquam* is never so used in classical Latin.

Obs. 3.—As an ordinary rule, the form of the apodosis corresponds with that of the protasis—the same *mood* and the same *sort of tense* in the subjunctive occurring in both (though there is no reason why one tense of the Indicative or Historic Subjunctive should not correspond to another, according to the time indicated). Important exceptions to this principle are the following:—

R. 103.—The Subjunctive in the Protasis is followed by the Indicative in the Apodosis, when the latter is formed:—

- i. By an auxiliary verb, *possum*, *debo*, *licet*, *oportet*, &c.
- ii. By a participle in *-urus*, or a gerundive.
- iii. (*Sometimes*) by *est* with neuter adjective.

Obs. 1.—The reason of the above rule is that there is something *conditional* implied by these forms, which takes the place of the subjunctive mood.

Obs. 2.—An *indicative* apodosis often occurs in other cases (especially instead of the *pluperf. subjunctive*) :—

- (i.) To lend vividness to a narrative, in which case the apodosis usually precedes the protasis, which always contains a negative; but
- (ii.) the use of the indicative apodosis is not confined to such instances

Romani **quamquam** defessi **erant**, tamen instructi procedunt. (*Sall. Jug.* 53.)

Although the Romans were worn out, yet they march forward in battle array.

Obs. 1.—**Nec auctor quamvis audaci** facinori deerat. (*Liv.* ii. 54.)

Nor was one wanting to commit the deed, however daring.

Obs. 2.—(**Si hoc ita est, gaudēbo,**

Si quid mihi opus esset, venissem,

Si litteras accepissem, nunc recitarem.)

R. 103.—

i. **Si ulla in te pietas esset, debēbas** eum loco patris colere. (*Cic. Phil.* ii. 38.)

ii. **Si Pompeius privatus esset, tamen ad bellum erat** diligendus. (*Cic. Man.*)

iii. **Si ita Milo putasset, optabilius fuit** dare jugulum Clodio. (*Cic. pro Mil.* 7.)

Obs. 1.—**Debēbas colere** expresses **coluisses**, but more strongly.

Diligendus erat expresses **delectus esset**, but more strongly.

Optabilius fuit expresses **optavisset**, but more strongly.

Obs. 2.—

(i.) **Præclare viceramus, nisi fugientem Lepidus** recepisset Antonium. (*Cic. Fam.* xii. 10.)

We had conquered gloriously, had not Lepidus received Antony in his flight.

(ii.) See the first two Examples under R. 102.

Obs. 3.—Sometimes the real apodosis is suppressed, and another substituted for it. So with **quasi** (*quam si*), **velut**, **tanquam** (*si*) which always occur with the *subjunctive*, although the apodosis may be *indicative*.

R. 104.—A sort of apodosis, without any protasis expressed, is often used to make a modified statement.

Obs. 1.—This is called the *Potential Subjunctive*, which is very common in certain phrases, as **velim**, **nolim**, **vellem**, **dixerim**, **quis dubitet?** **quis arbitraretur?** &c. The protasis if expressed would be, ‘*should occasion arise*,’ ‘*if I thought it just*,’ or something similar.

Obs. 2.—The Potential Subjunctive is also used with an *indicative protasis*.

Obs. 3.—Pons Sublicius iter pæne **dedit**, nisi unus vir **fuisset**.
(*Liv. ii. 10.*)

The Sublician bridge almost made a passage for the enemy, had not one man been present.

(*Here after pæne dedit—et dedisset, must be supplied.*)

Exercitus, velut haud mora **futura esset**, aciem **instruxit**. (*Liv. vii. 37.*)

He drew up the army, as if there were not likely to be a delay.

(*Here understand velut instruxisset, si haud mora futura esset.*)

R. 104.—Rogatus in hæc verba populus ‘**velitis** hæc fieri?’

The people were asked in this form, ‘Would you like this to be so?’

(*Here understand si sententiam feratis.*)

Obs. 1.—Quis **arbitraretur** tantum bellum uno anno confic posse?

Hoc sine ulla dubitatione **confirmaverim**.

Obs. 2.—Tu tamen **velim** orationem legas, nisi forte jam **legisti**. (*Cic.*)



APPENDIX II.—THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

A.—*Use of Qui with the Subjunctive (Résumé).*

The Subjunctive Mood is used after Qui :—

- I. When its force is *Final*, being used like **ut** with the subjunctive, meaning ‘*in order that*’.
- II. When its force is *Consecutive*, being used like **ut** with the subjunctive, meaning ‘*so that*,’ especially *after is, talis, dignus*, comparatives with **quam, unus, solus, &c.**
- III. When its *antecedent is indefinite*, and it is used to define a class (equivalent to *ejusmodi qui*). Note especially (i.) the phrases **sunt qui** and the like; (ii.) the use after *negatives, nemo est qui, or quasi-negatives, quis est qui? quotus quisque est qui?*
- IV. When its force is *Causal*, being used like **cum** with the subjunctive, meaning ‘*because*’.
- V. When its force is *Concessive*, being used like **cum** with the subjunctive, meaning ‘*although*’.
- VI. When its force is *Hypothetical*, being used like **si** with the subjunctive (called an *implied protasis*).

APPENDIX II.—THE RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

A.—*Use of Qui with the Subjunctive (Resumé).*

I. *Homini natura rationem dedit qua regerentur animi appetitus.* (*Cic. de Nat. De* ii.)

II. *Talis homo est cuius amicitiam difficillimum sit servare :*
He is a man of such a sort that it is hard to keep his friendship.

III. *Pinarius erat vir qui plus in eo, ne possit decipi, reponeret.* (*Liv. xxiv. 37.*)
Pinarius was a man (of a sort) to place more confidence in the impossibility of deception.

(i.) *Sunt qui putent :* some persons think.

(ii.) *Quis est qui non cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus ?* (*Cic.*)
Who is there that does not see how much force there is in the senses ?

IV. *Me miserum, qui non adfuerim.* (*Cic. Fam.*)
Alas ! for me, that I was not present.

V. *Ego, qui leviter Græcas litteras tetigisse, tamen Athenis commoratus sum.* (*Cic. Or. i.*)
I, though I had but lightly touched Greek letters, yet stayed at Athens.

VI. *Qui hæc videat, nonne cogatur fateri deos esse ?* (*Cic.*)
Should one see these things, would he not be compelled to confess that there are gods ?

Tu, quod tuo commodo fiat, quam primum velim venias. (*Cic. Fam.*)
I want you to come as soon as possible, provided it is convenient.

B.—*The Correlation of Pronouns and Adverbs.*

Obs. 1.—The Correlative pronouns, *quantus*, *quot*, *qualis*, &c., follow the rules for the use of *qui* as closely as possible.

Obs. 2.—With regard to their antecedents, *tantus*, *tot*, *talis*, &c., they (when they are expressed) are to be put in the *independent* sentence, while the correlatives use a *dependent* clause. (For *quanto (magis)* . . . *tanto (magis)* see R. 30, Obs. 2.)

Obs. 3.—In the use of these words, a difficulty is often felt as to the *precedence* of one clause or the other, but as the order of the clauses is variable, no precise rule can be given. However, if the last observation is kept in mind, the difficulty will disappear.

Obs. 4.—The following list of pronouns and adverbs is important, and may be easily learnt if the strict correspondence among the forms of each set is observed.

	INTERROGATIVE				
	DIRECT & INDIRECT				
	ADVERBS				
Who?	-	.	-	-	Quis?
How great?	-	-	-	-	Quantus?
How many?	-	-	-	-	Quot?
Of what sort?	-	-	-	-	Qualis?
Which of two?	-	-	-	-	Uter?
Whence?	-	-	-	-	Unde?
Where?	-	-	-	-	Ubi?
Whither?	-	-	-	-	Quo?
By what road? How?			-	-	Quâ [via]?
When?	-	-	-	-	Quando?

B.—*The Correlation of Pronouns and Adverbs.*

Obs. 2.—*Nunquam vidi tantam contionem, quanta nunc vestra est.* (Cic.)

I never saw so great an assembly as yours now is.

Si id, quanti æstimabat, tanti vendidit, desino quærere cur emeris. (Cic. Verr. iv. 5.)

If he sold it at the price that he valued it at, I cease to ask why you bought it.

(N.B.—*Both æstimabat and vendidit are dependent; but relatively speaking vendidit is independent and æstimabat dependent. The order of the two clauses is here quite optional.*)

DEMONSTRATIVE		RELATIVE	
DEFINITE	INDEFINITE	DEFINITE	INDEFINITE
Ille, Is	Aliquis, Quis	Qui	Quicunque
Tantus	Aliquantus	Quantus	Quantuscunque
Tot	Aliquot	Quot	Quotcunque
Talis	[Aliqualis]	Qualis	Qualiscunque
Alter	Uterlibet		

AND CONJUNCTIONS

Inde	Alicunde	Unde	Undecunque
Ibi	Alicubi	Ubi	Ubicunque
Eo	Aliquo	Quo	Quocunque
Eâ	Aliquâ	Quâ	Quacunque
	Aliquando	Quando	Quandocunque

APPENDIX III.—TABULAR VIEW OF THE

PART THE FIRST.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

CLASS	SUB-DIVISION	SIGNIFICATION
§§ xvi., xvii.		Wish.
I.—PURE CONJUNCTIVE, <i>i.e.</i> , Subjunctive Mood without Subordination,	1. OPTATIVE, 2. JUSSIVE, 3. CONCESSIVE, 4. DELIBERATIVE,	Modified Command. Rhetorical Concession. Deliberation(ordoubt).

PART THE SECOND.—THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

CLASS	SUB-DIVISION	SIGNIFICATION
§§ xix., xx.		Dependent Question.
II.—OBLIQUE, <i>i.e.</i> , expressing mere SUBORDINATION,	5. INTERROGATIVE 6. (SUB)OBLIQUE, 7. VIRTUALLY (SUB)OBLIQUE,	Subordination to Infin. or Subj. Subordination to word of pregnant meaning
§ xxi.		Purpose.
III.—FINAL, <i>i.e.</i> , expressing PURPOSE,	8. FINAL, 9. QUASI-TEMPO- RAL,	Purpose depending on Time.
§ xxii.		Natural or Actual Re- sult.
IV.—CONSECUTIVE, <i>i.e.</i> , expressing RESULT,	10. CONSECUTIVE, 11. GENERIC, 12. EXPLANATORY,	Definition for class. Explanation of noun or neuter pronoun (sometimes omitted).
§ xxiii.		Circumstance owing to which.
V.—CAUSAL, <i>i.e.</i> , expressing CAUSE or CIRCUMSTANCE,	13. CAUSAL, 14. ADVERSATIVE, 15. TEMPORAL,	Circumstance in spite of which. Circumstance of His- toric importance.
§ xxiv		Condition or Supposi- tion.
VI.—HYPOTHETICAL, <i>i.e.</i> , expressing CONTINGENCY,	16. PROTASIS, 17. CONCESSIVE, 18. APODOSIS, 19. POTENTIAL,	Concession or Limita- tion. Inference from Condi- tion. Modified Statement (protasis being sup- pressed).

CHIEF USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

ILLUSTRATION

1. **Valeant** cives mei, **sint** incolumes, **sint** beati, **sint** florentes.
2. **Speremus** quæ volumus, sed quid acciderit **feramus**.
3. Ne **sint** in senectute vires, ne postulantur quidem vires a senectute.
4. Quid **agerem**? Contenderem contra tribunum plebis privatus armis?

5. Incredibile est quam ego ista non **currem**.
6. Dixit id quod milites **vellet** se facturum esse.
7. Socrates accusatus est quod **corrumperet** juventutem.
8. Edere oportet ut **vivas**, non vivere ut **edas**.
9. Obsidio magis quam oppugnatio fuit, dum vulnus ducis **curaretur**.

10. Omnis via lubrica erat, ut alii super alios **occiderint**.
11. Fuere qui **crederent** Crassum non ignarum consilii esse
12. Puero [hoc] opus est cibum ut **habeat**.

13. Necesse est cum **sint** di, ut profecto sunt, animantes esse.
14. Druentiam dicunt, cum aquæ vim **vehat**, navium non patientem esse.
15. Quæ cum **dixisset**, spiritum emisit.
16. Quibus, si plures **essent**, haud posset resisti.
17. Quod turpe est, quamvis **occultetur**, tamen honestum non potest fieri.
18. Quibus, si plures **essent**, haud **posset** resisti.
19. Quis **dubitetur** quin in virtute divitiæ **sint**?

§ XXV.—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Obs.—By *Oratio Obliqua* is simply meant *Speech reported in the words of another*—a method of reporting very much in harmony with the genius of the Latin language. To represent the speaker's words in the exact form in which he uttered them, was with the Romans rather unusual, whereas in English the reporter seldom clothes a speech in his own words, unless when he wishes to give merely the subject compressed within narrower limits. Indeed, owing to the necessary use of a *Past tense throughout* in English *Oratio Obliqua*, we find the method both cumbrous and ambiguous. The Rule for tense in Latin is much more reasonable:—

*R. 105.—In all cases the exact tense used by the speaker reappears in *Oratio Obliqua*, except in those cases in the subjunctive where the **Law of Sequence** interferes.

Obs.—Even this restriction is subject to many exceptions, especially in long periods, where we often find *Primary* tenses following 'dixit.'

*R. 106.—The Rule for the use of Moods is as follows:—

- i. The **Indicative** never occurs (*in Oratio Obliqua proper*).
- ii. The **Infinitive** always occurs in **Independent Sentences**.
- iii. The **Subjunctive** always occurs in **Dependent Clauses**.

§ XXV—ORATIO OBLIQUA.

Obs.—Thus, in the sentence, ‘He said that he **went** to Rome,’ there is nothing in the words to show what tense the speaker used—whether his words were ‘**I go**,’ or ‘**I went**.’ Again, ‘He said that he **would go** to Rome,’ might represent ‘**I will go**,’ or ‘**I would go**’ (*i.e.*, if I could).

R. 105.—I **go** to Rome; Romam **eo** becomes **dixit (dicit) se ire.**

I **went** to Rome, Romam **ivi** becomes **dixit (dicit) se ivisse.**

I **will go** to Rome, Romam **ibo** becomes **dixit (dicit) se iturum esse.**

I **would go** to Rome, Romam **ire velim** becomes **dixit (dicit) se ire velle.**

Obs.—See *Cæs.* i. 14, where, after many historic verbs, he proceeds :

Cum ea ita **sint**, si obsides ab eis sibi **dentur** . . . sese cum iis pacem esse facturum.

R. 106.—

i. Ariovistus legatos mittit **velle** se de his rebus agere.

ii. Respondit nulos esse agros qui . . . dari **possint**.

Obs. 1.—With regard to the *indicative*, it may be found in the midst of *Oratio Obliqua*, in which case it is to be considered a clause *foreign to the speech*, and introduced as an assertion of the Reporter. However, there are some exceptions, notably with **dum**, and short *defining* clauses, which may be considered to have acquired a stereotyped form. See R. 90.

Obs. 2.—Note that (i.) ‘**inquit**’ is, like ‘said he,’ used only in transcribing *Oratio Recta*, and does not precede, but follows the first word or two; and (ii.) **nego** is properly used to introduce a negative statement.

Obs. 3.—Some clauses with *relatives* are practically *independent*, and are treated as such in O.O., and put in the *Infinitive* (sometimes too, by a sort of attraction, they are even, though not independent, expressed by the *Infinitive*)

Obs. 4.—*Commands* (when not expressed by **oportet**, **debeo**, &c.) are treated as *dependent* clauses, and put in the *subjunctive*. They may be supposed to depend on some word like **oportet** understood.

Obs. 5.—Often the verb introducing the O.O. is omitted, and the construction alone shows that the speech is reported.

R. 107.—*Ordinary questions* are treated as dependent clauses, and are expressed in the *subjunctive*; those that are, merely **Rhetorical** are like *independent sentences*, expressed in the *Infinitive*.

Obs. 1.—Rhetorical questions are those which are not asked to elicit a reply, but are put for mere effect, and are in reality *exclamations*.

Obs. 2.—In some authors nearly all questions in the 1st and 3rd persons are treated like Rhetorical questions.

Obs. 1.—*See Examples under R. 90 (Obs. 1).*

Hortatur ad cætera quæ levia sunt parem animum gerant. (*Sall. Jug.* 54.)

He exhorts them to bear with equanimity all the rest, which is of little account.

Obs. 2.—‘Ad hæc,’ **inquit**, ‘quæ levia sunt parem animum gerite.’

Negavit hoc verum esse:

He said that this was not true.

Obs. 3.—Fama est aram esse in vestibulo templi **cujus** [= et ejus] cinerem nunquam **moveri** vento. (*Liv.* xxiv. 3.)

Scribebant, ut feras mitescere arte, sic immitem esse ejus viri animum. (*Ib.* xxiii. 45.)

Obs. 4.—Dixit, bono animo essent [sc. oportere].

R. 107.—*Quid de præda faciendum censerent.* (*Liv.*)

What did they think should be done with the spoil?
[*Direct form, censemus?*]

Num etiam harum injuriarum memoriam deponere posse? (*Cæs.*)

Could he even banish the memory of these wrongs?
[*Direct form, num possum?*]

Obs. 1.—*Num possum* is strongly negative.

Obs. 2.—*An quidquam esse superbius?* (*Liv.*)

Could anything be more arrogant?

R. 108.—All **Pronouns** and their **derived adverbs** are ordinarily expressed in the third person, distinction being made by the **use of Sui** or **Ipse**, generally to express the speaker, and **Is** or **Ille**, frequently to express the person spoken to. **Hic** and **Iste** do not often occur.

Obs. 1.—However, **nos**, &c., may be used of the Roman people or army.

Obs. 2.—The use of **sui** being complicated, is reserved for a separate section.

R. 108.—Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res quas
legati commemorassent memoria teneret. (*Cæs.*
i. 14.)

[*Direct form, eo mihi minus dubitationis datur quod
eas res quas vos commemoravistis memoria teneo.*]

Obs. 2.—See § xxvii.

§ XXVI.—HYPOTHETICAL SENTENCES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

R. 109.—The **Protasis**, as a dependent clause, is always expressed in the **Subjunctive**, and the **tense of Oratio Recta preserved**, sometimes in violation of the **Law of Sequence**.

Obs.—A little consideration will show the necessity of this usage. As there is an essential distinction between the meanings of the *Primary* and *Historic* tenses in these clauses, nothing but confusion could arise from an application of the **Law of Sequence** to the *Primary*, or even to the *Historic* tenses.

R. 110.—The **Apodosis**, as an independent sentence, is always expressed in the **Infinitive**, the **tense being preserved** as closely as possible.

Obs.—It has been remarked that the *present infinitive* represents the *present and imperfect indicative*, and the *perfect indicative* the *perfect and pluperfect indicative*. *Primary* tenses of the *subjunctive* are represented by the *present or fut. infin.* With regard to the *Historic* tenses, learn the following :—

R. 111.—The **Imperfect Subjunctive** is expressed:—
 i. By the **future infinitive with ‘esse’**; the **Pluperfect**—
 ii. By the **future infinitive with ‘fuisse’**.

Obs.—In the *passive*, and when there is no future infinitive, substitution will be made by means of the *periphrastic* construction with *futurum esse (fore)*.

§ XXVI.—HYPOTHETICAL SENTENCES IN ORATIO OBLIQUA.

R. 109.—Cæsar respondit, si obsides ab iis dentur, sese pacem cum eis facturum. (*Cæs.* i. 14.)

[*Direct form, si obsides dentur, or dantur.*]

Obs.—*Here, if the strict sequence darentur was observed, it might imply that the hostages could not be given.*

Compare Scio quid facturus fueris (R. 85, Obs. 3) *si venissem.*

I know what you would have done, if I had come.

R. 110.—Cæsar respondit, si obsides ab iis dentur, sese pacem cum eis facturum (esse).

[*Direct form, faciam.*]

Obs.—*Dicit or Dixit se facere si possit.* [O.R., facio si possum.]

Dixit se facere si posset. [O.R., faciebam si poteram.]

Dixit se fecisse si potuerit. [O.R., feci si potui.]

Dixit se fecisse si potuisset. [O.R., feceram si potueram.]

<i>Dixit se facere</i> <i>Dixit se fac-</i> <i>turum esse</i>	<i>si possit</i> <i>si potuerit</i>	<i>[O.R., faciam si</i> <i>possim.</i> <i>[O.R., fecerim si</i> <i>potuerim.</i>
---	--	---

R. 111.—

Dixit si hoc diceret, erraturum esse.

[O.R., si hoc dicerein, errarem.]

Dixit si hoc dixisset, erraturum fuisse.

[O.R., si hoc dixissem, erravisse.]

Obs.—*Dixit si hoc factum esset futurum fuisse ut urbs caperetur.*

[O.R., si hoc factum esset, urbs **capta** esset.]

§ XXVII.—REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS IN O.O.

Obs.—It has been remarked (i.) that the Reflexive pronouns (**sui**, **suus**) can only refer to the *subject of the sentence*, although (ii.) that subject may sometimes be considered *logically* rather than grammatically. But there is often more than one subject in a complex sentence, and especially in *Oratio Obliqua*, when we have the speaker to be considered. Hence there might be great ambiguity in the use of those pronouns whose special function is perspicuity. The remedy for this difficulty will be found in :—

R. 112.—Ambiguity in the use of sui (suus) is to be avoided by the use of ipse, generally to express the Principal Subject.

Obs.—However, it must be remembered that **ipse** is not properly reflexive, and often **sui** is reserved for the *principal* subject, while **ipse** and other pronouns refer to the *subordinate* subject, &c. Very often the inflexions of **ipse**, &c., which are more complete than those of **sui**, make the reference plain. With regard to **sui** by itself, the use depends a good deal on the logic of common sense, but nearly always we may apply the following :—

R. 113.—Where Ipse is not used, Sui may refer to the Principal Sentence, but only if there is no dependent clause to which it could naturally refer.

Obs.—In *final* clauses the reference of **sui** is always to the principal or *purposing* subject; also, after verbs of *praying* and *commanding*, it refers to their subject, while after verbs of *exhorting* and *advising*, to the *subordinate* subject.

§ XXVII. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS IN O.O.

Obs.—(i.) *See R. 48, which compare with the present section.*

(ii.) **A Cæsare invitor ut sibi sim legatus.** (*Cic. Att. ii. 18.*)
I am asked by Cæsar [*i.e.*, Cæsar asks me] to be his lieutenant.

Faustulo spes erat regiam stirpem apud se educari.
(*Liv. i. 5.*)

Hope was in the mind of Faustulus [*i.e.*, he hoped] that kingly offspring was being reared in his house.

R. 112.—Cæsar milites incusavit, cur de sua virtute aut de **ipsius** vigilantia desperarent. (*Cæs.*)
C. reproached the soldiers, asking why should they despair about their own valour or his watchfulness.

Obs. 1. [Respondit Cæsar] si obsides ab **iis sibi** dentur et si Hæduis de injuriis, quas **ipsis** intulerint, satisfaciant, **sese** cum **iis** pacem facturum. (*Cæs. i. 14.*)

[Cæsar replied] that if hostages were given to him by them, and if they should make satisfaction to the Hæduans for the injuries which they had done to them [*i.e.*, the Hæduans], he would make peace with them.

R. 113.—Cæsar reperit Dumnorix aduersus **se** copias parare.
Cæsar finds that Dumnorix is preparing a force against himself [*i.e.*, Cæsar].

(*Here it is evident 'Dumnorix contra se parat copias' is nonsense, and compare—*

Cæsar reperit Dumnorix **suam** rem auxisse.

Cæsar finds that D. has increased his [*i.e.*, of Dumnorix] army.)

Obs.—Cæsar **imperat** militibus ut **sibi** obedient.

Cæsar orders the soldiers to obey himself [*i.e.*, Cæsar].

Suadet amico ut quam primum **sibi** consulat.

He advises his friend to take measures for himself [*i.e.*, the friend] as soon as possible.

§ XXVIII.—IDIOMATIC PHRASES.

A.—IDIOMS OF CASE.

To make the same promise.	Idem promittere.
To tell many lies.	Multa mentiri.
I have nothing to accuse old age of.	Nihil habeo quod accusem senectutem.
The city of Rome.	Urbs Roma.
The island of Cyprus.	Cyprus Insula.
The war against Pyrrhus.	Bellum Pyrrhi.
Wrongs done to Caius.	Injuriæ Caii.
Rest from labour.	Requies laborum.
He went to school at Naples.	Ivit Neapolim ad scholam.
To take in good part.	Boni consulere.
To be in anxious suspense.	Pendere animi.
To throw oneself at Cæsar's feet.	Cæsari ad pedes se projicere.
I have a pen to write with.	Pennam habeo qua scribam.
For the most part.	Partem maximam.
A man of that age.	Homo id ætatis.
In words of that kind.	In id genus verbis.

B.—IDIOMS RELATING TO TIME.

Daily, day by day.	In diem, in dies.
From day to day.	Diem de die.
Day after day I am waiting.	Diem ex die exspecto.
In broad day.	De die.
Towards night.	Sub noctem.
Late in the night.	Multa de nocte.
Once in ten days.	Decimo quoque die.
Every other day.	Alternis diebus.
Every 5th year.	Quinto quoque anno.
Within the memory of man.	Post hominum memoriam.
Since the creation of the world.	Post homines natos.
They had been long preparing.	Jam pridem parabant.

You have now been listening to Cratippus for a year.	Annum jam audis Cratippum.
To have reigned above 6 years.	Septimum jam annum regnare.
It is many years since he was first in my debt.	Multi sunt anni quum in meo ære est.
Before the consulship of Caius.	Ante Caium consulem.
From the foundation of Rome.	Post Romanam conditam.
About 20 years of age.	Viginti ferme annos natus.
Older by 20 years.	Major annis viginti (natu).
Younger by 40 years.	Minor annis quadraginta (natu).
He died 4 years after I saw him.	Post tres annos* mortuus est quam videram illum.
† { On the 31st of December. On the 30th of December. The election was fixed for the 30th of Dec. B.C. 216.	Prid. Kal. Jan.
	A.D. iii. Kal. Jan.
	Comitia edicta sunt in A.D. iii. Kal. Jan. A.U.C. dxxxviii.

C.—IDIOMS OF THE COMPARATIVE.

He conducted wars with more courage than success.	Bella fortius quam felicius gessit.
A river more than usually rapid.	Amnis solito citatior.
Cæsar will come sooner than was expected.	Cæsar opinione celerius veniet.
Old age is naturally rather talkative.	Senectus est natura loquacior.
He was too proud to steal.	Superbior erat quam ut (qui) furaretur.
He is above deceit.	Honestior est quam qui mentiatur.
He is beneath notice.	Turpior est quam cui debeas irasci.
Too short to be for the whole life of man.	Brevior quam quæ possit esse tota vita hominis.
His crimes had been too great to be forgiven.	Majora deliquerat quam quibus ignosci posset.
He is too careful for me.	Prudentior est quam qui possit mihi placere.

* For alternative constructions, see R. 37, Obs. 3; and for mood and tense of videram, see App. iv., 2 and 13.

† The instances given here are merely illustrative of the complete rule for expressing dates in Latin, which, with explanations, will be found in any ordinary grammar, and must be carefully studied.

D.—IDIOMS OF THE SUPERLATIVE.

All the wisest.	Sapientissimus quisque.
The excellent Balbus told me this.	Balbus, vir optimus, mihi hæc dixit.
Who would believe a man like Catiline?	Quis Catilinæ, homini impurissimo, credat?
My dear friend Balbus.	Balbus, vir mihi amicissimus.
These things are hard to avoid.	Hæc difficillime vitantur.
Cæsar led with him the largest force he could.	Cæsar secum duxit quam maximas potuit copias.
As great a difference as there can possibly be.	Differentia quanta maxima potest esse.
I am as mild as the gentlest man in the world.	Tam sum mitis quam qui lenissimus.
They departed as quickly as possible.	Abierunt quam celerrime.

E.—IDIOMS OF THE PREPOSITIONS.

Equally.—On purpose.	Ex æquo.—De industria.
Unexpectedly.—Afresh.	Ex improviso.—De novo, integro.
Beyond measure, belief.	Supra modum, fidem.
Beyond hope, expectation.	Præter spem, opinionem.
On one's journey.	Ex itinere.
Right over, against.	E regione.
With all my heart.	Ex animo.
To the purpose.	In rem.
To this effect.	In hanc sententiam.
An amanuensis.	A manu servus.
To fight on horseback.	Ex equo pugnare.
After the manner of slaves.	Ad modum servorum.
To have a prosperous voyage.	E sententia navigare.
In course of supper.	Inter cœnam.
In Cicero's writings.	} Apud Ciceronem.
At Cicero's house.	
I am near the town.	Prope absum ab oppido.
I am in his favor.	Sto ab illo.
This is in his favor.	Hoc facit ab (cum) illo.
They were killed to a man.	Omnes ad unum occisi sunt.
After his consulship he left Rome.	E consulatu Roma excessit.

To march into the territory of the Gauls.	In Gallos proficisci.
They love one another.	Inter sese amant.
To compare things together.	Inter sese res conferre.
Common to me and you.	Communis mihi tecum.
To gain a triumph for a victory over the Gauls.	De Gallis triumphare.
For the common good.—For the worse.	In commune.—In pejus.
In general.	In universum.
To make a show of.	Præ se ferre.
He could not speak for joy.	Præ gaudio non potuit loqui.
By the gods I entreat you !	Per ego te deos oro.
Heir to the whole estate.	Ex asse hæres.

F.—IDIOMS OF THE PRONOUNS.

Balbus and I.—You and I.	Ego et Balbus.—Ego et tu.
One Balbus.	Balbus quidam.
That famous Balbus.	Balbus ille (celeber).
How many of us are there ?	Quot sumus ?
300 of us are come.	Trecenti venimus.
Of whom there are many.	Qui sunt plurimi.
Very many of which.	Quæ plurima.
A slave of mine.	Servus meus, or, quidam ex meis.
Hardly anybody.—No painter.	Fere nemo.—Nemo pictor.
He was the first who did it.	Primus hoc fecit.
It is not every man who can do it.	Non est cujusvis facere.
Some mock, others approve.	Alii derident, alii approbant.
Some run one way, others another.	Alii aliam currunt viam.
Different men run different ways.	Alius aliam currit viam.
Literature, and that, too, of no common kind.	Litteræ, nec eæ vulgares.
He has built a house, and that, too, a large one.	Domum ædificavit eandemque magnam.
A good man, it is true, but unlearned.	Bonus ille quidem vir sed impenitus.
Something or other disturbed.	Nescio quid perturbatus.
Without any dangers.	Expers omnis periculi.
Some persons think.	Sunt qui putent.

How few there are who think. He sends the most faithful slave he has.	Quotusquisque est qui putet. Mittit servum quem habet fide- lissimum.
Such is your temperance.	{Quæ est tua temperantia, Cujus es temperantiæ.
Those whom we love we also wish happy.	Quos amamus, eosdem felices esse volumus.
I noticed the joy with which they heard me.	Neque me fefellit quanto gaudio me audirent.

G.—IDIOMS OF THE VERB.

Take care to do it.	Cura (fac) ut facias.
Do not do it.	Noli facere, or Cave facias.
I say that I will not do it.	Nego me facturum esse.
I rather think I shall not do it.	
I don't know whether I shall	
do it.	
I have to do it.	Faciendum est mihi.
I need to do it.	Necesse est facere.
I ought to do it.	Oportet me facere.
I am at leisure to do it.	Vacat mihi facere.
I am on the point of doing it.	In eo est ut faciam.
I cannot but do it.	Non possum non facere.
It cannot be that I will not do it.	Non potest fieri quin faciam.
I all but did it.	Haud multum abfuit quin facerem.
It was owing to you that I did not do it.	
You will never make me do it.	Per te stetit quominus facerem.
I shall get it done.	
I am so far from doing it that I do not even think about it.	Numquam efficies ut faciam.
Far from doing this I forbid your doing it.	Curabo faciendum.
I have no reason for doing it.	Tantum abest ut faciam ut ne cogitem quidem de hoc.
I make it my object to do it.	Tantum abest ut faciam ut te vetem facere.
I do nothing but do it.	Nihil est quod faciam.
It is universally admitted that I did it.	Id ago ut faciam. Nihil {aliud quam facio. nisi facio.
	Constat inter{quod fecerim. omnes {me fecisse.

I am not the man to do it.
I don't like to do it.
I cannot be persuaded to do it.
I did it knowingly, unwittingly.

Non sum is qui faciat.
Non libenter facio.
Non juvat facere.
Mihi non potest suaderi ut faciam.
Feci prudens, imprudens.

H.—ENGLISH PREPOSITION-PHRASES.

Instead of helping me, you caused me trouble.
Instead of pleasing himself, he tries to please you.
In censuring them, you censure me.
He is kind in suffering thee to depart.
He has the greatest difficulty in suspecting.
In addition to this he is blind.
In spite of all the citizens could do.
In case of his death, you will be heir.
Including women and children.
On account of my friends I grieve.
I congratulate you on your influence with Cæsar.
According to the general the soldiers fought bravely.
He deserves praise for having done this.
The honor of having saved a fellow-citizen.
I am different from what I once was.
He could scarcely be restrained from throwing.
Nothing prevents him from doing it.

Quum deberes me juvare, molestus eras.
Quum possit sibi, vobis placere conatur.
Quum illos culpas, me quoque culpas.
Benignus est qui te patiatur abire.
Difficillime suspicatur.
Huc accedit quod cæcus est.
Civibus omnia nequidquam tantibus.
Si mortuus erit, tu hæres eris.
Si annumeraveris mulieres et liberos.
Evidem amicorum vicem doleo.
Gratulor tibi quum (quod) tantum vales apud Cæsarem.
Teste imperatore, milites fortiter pugnaverunt.
Dignus est laude qui hoc fecerit.
Servati civis decus.
Alius sum atque olim fui.
Vix potuit retineri quin jaceret.
Nihil obstat quominus faciat.

No letter from you with much grief to me.	Nulla epistola tua cum meo maximo dolore.
Many admire poems without understanding them.	Plurimi poemata mirantur neque intelligunt.
She never saw him without calling him a fratricide.	Nunquam eum aspexit quin fratricidam vocaret.
You cannot be ruined without ruining them.	Tu non potes ruere ut illi non ruant.
He could not be discharged without paying the fine.	Emitti non poterat nisi pecuniam solvisset.
They condemn him without hearing him.	Inauditum condemnant.
He goes away without your perceiving it.	Te non sentiente discedit.
Nothing can be done without violating the laws.	Nihil potest fieri salvis legibus.
They departed without accomplishing anything.	Re infecta abierunt.
It is wretched to take pains without making any progress.	Miserum est nihil proficientem angi.
To sail down the stream.	Secundo flumine navigare.
To advance up the hill.	In adversum collem subire.
To run sideways down the hill.	Obliquo monte decurrere.

K.—UNCLASSIFIED IDIOMS.

So to speak. To be brief.	Ut ita dicam. Quid <i>{plura? multa?</i>
God forbid! Good luck to you!	Di omen avertant! Macte virtute!
Whether I wish or no.	Velim nolim.
No sooner said than done.	Dictum (ac) factum.
I beg your pardon.	Nolle factum.
To whom is it an advantage?	Cui bono?
What is that to you?	Quid tua id refert?
The thing in question.	Id de quo agitur.
It is all over with us.	Actum est de nobis.
I begin to think of Plato.	Venit mihi Platonis in mentem.
By land and by sea.	Terra marique.
With heaven's aid.	Diis adjuvantibus.

To stir a hair's breadth.	Latum unguem discedere.
A perfect gentleman.	Homo factus ad unguem.
The matter is still pending.	Adhuc sub judice lis est.
Beside the mark.	Nihil ad rem.
To the best of my power.	Pro virili parte.
At my mercy.	In potestate (manu) mea.
What shall we do with it?	Quomodo utendum est hoc?
To be able to pay.	Solvendo esse.
This does not at all terrify me.	Hoc nihil me terret.
To inform another.	Alium certiorem facere.
The victory cost them many wounds.	Victoria stetit illis multis vulneribus.
To prefer death to slavery.	Servitutem posthabere morti.
To inflict punishment on a man.	Alicui pœnas sumere.
To threaten a man with death.	Alicui mortem minitari.
To bring a capital charge against a man.	Aliquem reum facere capitis.
These things tend to the preservation of liberty.	Hæc sunt libertatis conservandæ.
These things tend to the destruction of the Republic.	Hæc sunt rei publicæ revertendæ.
John, Henry and Thomas.	{ Johannes, Henricus, Thomas; or, Johannes et Henricus et Thomas.
He gave them £8.	Dedit eis sestertium (HS.)
He gave them £100.	Dedit eis HS. XII.
He gave them £800.	Dedit eis sestertium semel.
I invested money at 1 per cent.	Pecuniam collocavi unciis.
I invested money at 5 per cent.	Pecuniam collocavi quincuncibus usuris.
I invested money at 12 per cent.	Pecuniam collocavi assibus, or centesimis usuris.

APPENDIX IV.—INDEX OF CONJUNCTIONS AND PARTICLES.

1. The following are enclitics, *i.e.*, cannot commence a sentence or clause:—*-que*, *-ve*, *-ne*, *autem*, *enim*, *modo*, *quidem*, *vero*, *igitur* (generally), *-cum* (with abl. of pronouns).
2. **Antequam**, **prinsquam** (*before that*) take the (*perfect*) *indicative*, when signifying mere time in the past, but the *subjunctive*, when there is any idea of *purpose* or *design*. When the time is future, they take the *fut. perf. indic.*, *pres. indic.* or *present subjunctive*.
3. **Autem** (*but*) is slightly adversative, introducing something new, but merely in continuation.
Sed is strongly adversative, introducing a correction or limitation.
At gives an abrupt or lively transition (**at enim** states the objection of an adversary).
4. **Aut** (*either*) . . . **aut** (*or*) is disjunctive, and points a strong contrast.
Vel . . . **vel** is conjunctive, and gives an alternative without contrast.
5. **Dum** (*which*) takes the *present indicative* (even in O.O.)
Dum (*as long as*), **donec**, take any tense of the *indicative*.
Dum (*until*), **donec**, take the *subjunctive* (and so whenever there is any idea of purpose or design).
6. **Et** is the ordinary connective, both for words and sentences, especially when one conjunction answers another (**et** . . . **et**).
-Que is used mostly with single words, and joins them more closely than **et**. Occasionally it is used preceding **et** (**-que** . . . **et**), but not following **et** (**et** . . . **-que**), and rarely in prose with another **-que**.

Both **et** and **-que** are used in correspondence with **neque** (**nec**), where in English we use an adversative (*but*, or *on the other hand, &c.*)

7. **Haud** (*not*) is perhaps stronger than **non**, but it is not so much used in prose, except with certain words, as **haud scio**.
8. **Jam** (*now*) with reference to the past or the future.
Nunc (*now*) with reference to the present only.
9. **Magis** (*more*) is used with adjectives, and meaning *more in degree*.
Plus (*more*) is used with verbs, and meaning *more in quantity*.
10. **Ne . . . quidem** (*not even*), always separated by the word to which they refer: the phrase often answers to **non** {**solum**
modo}, which last may stand for **non modo non**,* e.g., “*quæ non solum facta, sed ne fieri quidem potuisse.*” (*Cic. Rep. 2, 15.*) “Not only not facts, but not even possible to occur.”
11. **Nonnunquam** means *sometimes*, **nunquam non**, *always*; and so with **nonnihil**, **nihil non**; **nonnemo**, **nemo non**, &c.
12. **Primum**, means *first*, or *in the first place*.
Primo, means *at first* (and sometimes = **primum**).
N.B.—Distinguish **Primus fecit**, he was the first to do it.
Primum fecit, he did it first (*i.e.*, before he did anything else).
13. **Postquam** (*after that*) is used with the *perfect indicative*, except where a long interval of time is expressed, in which case it takes the *pluperf. indicative*.
Simul atque, ubi, ut (*when*) take the *perfect indicative*.

* This expression may appear absurd: it is merely given as a practical rule.

Quum (*when*) takes the *indicative* if merely defining the time, the *subjunctive* (imperf. or pluperf.) when narrating an historic incident in the sequence of events.

[If meaning *since*, or *although*, it takes the subjunctive, see R. 101, 2.]

Also see below, end of No. 15.

14. **Quamvis** (*although*) takes the subjunctive.

Quamquam (*although*) takes the indicative.

[N.B.—In regard to conjunctions used with *indic.*, it will always be understood to mean if not in *Oratio Obliqua*.]

Etsi, etiamsi, follow the rules for *Hypothetical* sentences.

Licet is always used with the *subjunctive*.

15. **Quod, quia** (*because*) take the *indicative*, except

i. when used with a negative;

ii. when giving a *quoted* reason (virtually sub-oblique).

[N.B.—**Quod** is more commonly used with the subjunctive than **quia**.]

Quoniam, Quandoquidem, take the indicative.

For **quum**, see above, No. 13.

Quod, (that) usually takes the indicative in *Oratio Recta*.

Quod and **quum**, (*because or that*) after verbs of emotion, frequently occur with the indicative, e.g., *Gaudeo quod (quum) tu vales*.

16. **Quo** means (i.) *Whither*.

(ii.) *In order that*, with comparatives, taking the subjunctive mood.

(iii.) With **eo**, *the* (more).

17. **Quominus** (*quo minus, but that*), always with subjunctive, is used after verbs of *prohibiting* and *preventing*.

Quin (*but that*) with subjunctive has three uses:

(i.) like **quominus**, but only after *negative* clause, or (with an interrogative of quasi-negative force).

(ii.) after verbs of *doubting* and *denying* (also used with negative), or similar phrases, as **non est dubium quin**, &c.

(iii.) after any negative word, to signify that one thing does not happen without another.

Quin, with *indicative* is sometimes used in sense of *why not*, or in the phrase **quin immo**, which corrects an assertion often by a stronger one.

18. **Si non** (*if not*) simply introduces a negative condition, and qualifies single words.

Nisi, (*unless*) also introduces a negative condition, but at the same time hints that if the condition is not fulfilled, the conclusion (or apodosis) is contradicted.

19. **Vero** (*but*) has much the same force as **autem**, (being, like it, an enclitic).

Verum (*but*) has much the same force as **sed**.

APPENDIX V.—HINTS ON STYLE.

A.—INTRODUCTORY HINTS.

1. The following hints are not intended as a complete treatise on Style, which would be out of place in the present work. Moreover, to write a language idiomatically involves practice; but a few hints may be a help at starting. Some of these may not, perhaps, prove easy for the beginner to grasp; the best way of overcoming the difficulty would be to keep them in mind when translating from Latin into English, and to strive in this way to note the contrast between the idioms of the two languages.

2. Changing one language into another does not consist merely in translating words so much as in transferring ideas. Therefore, when writing Latin prose, mechanically looking out the words in an English-Latin Dictionary is of small avail, and should be sparingly resorted to. The great point is to *feel the idea* expressed by the English, and then to try and put that idea into a Latin garb.

3. Expressing the individual ideas is one thing, and may be called Phrasing: combining the ideas together is another, and may be called Structure. Note that while the phrases of Latin, as compared with those of modern style, are far more simple and like the instinctive talk of children, yet Latin structure is extremely artificial and complicated—not merely as compared with our own language, but also with that of the Greeks.

B.—HINTS RELATING TO PHRASEOLOGY.

4. The simplicity of Latin phraseology often consists in the use of a *concrete expression* where we should put an *abstract noun*. Thus 'miles' replaces 'soldiery': 'quæ volumus,' 'our intentions,' and 'quod loquax est impedit nobis quin res bene evertat,' 'his

loquacity is an impediment to the success of our undertaking.' Hence, we may say abstract terms in English are frequently replaced in Latin by:—

- i. *Concrete nouns, adjectives, and adverbs.*
- ii. *Verbs.*
- iii. *Gerunds and gerundial forms.*

5. Modern phrases in process of becoming simplified are often turned by a *periphrasis*, especially when they are:—

- i. *Metaphorical*; as 'an overclouded face' becomes 'vultus tanquam cœlum nubibus obscuratus'—unless the metaphor is dropped, e.g., 'to receive with open arms' might be 'summa benevolentia accipere.'
- ii. *Too compact*; as 'the conscience-smitten defendant' becomes 'reus qui conscientiam sceleris prodebat.'
- iii. *Remote from ancient life and thought*; as 'a journeyman' is 'operarius in diem conductus,' 'a non-conformist' becomes 'qui sacris a Republica institutis dissidet.'

6. The connection between sentences, often implied in English, is explicit in Latin. Thus every sentence should, as a rule, begin with a non-subordinating conjunction, or relative pronoun.

- i. The most common conjunctions in this use are 'et,' 'sed,' 'autem,' 'enim,' 'igitur' (or their equivalents), according to the shade of connection required.
- ii. *Relatives*, which are always equivalent to some conjunction, are very frequent, especially at the beginning of sentences and periods.

C.—HINTS RELATING TO STRUCTURE.

7. Sentences are not merely to be joined by connectives, but are often preferably subordinated to one principal sentence. Hence the long Period, which is the perfection of Latin Prose—while the short sentence, so characteristic of modern English, is reserved in

Latin for lively narrative or impassioned oratory. The subordination is effected as follows :—

- i. By the use of participles, especially the ablative absolute, and of gerundial construction.
- ii. By the use of *subordinating* conjunctions, as 'ut,' 'quum,' 'quod,' 'quamvis,' 'si,' &c.
- iii. By the use of relatives—in a way equivalent to one of the above conjunctions.

8. Excellence of structure in a Period may be reduced to three principal characteristics, viz. :—

- i. *Perspicuity*, which, though essential to all good style, is in constant danger of being lost in the intricacy of the period.
- ii. *Right Emphasis*, for the sake of which great attention must be paid to the order of the words.
- iii. *Rhythm*, or a regular and pleasing flow of the syllables and words.

9. **Perspicuity** may be sought as follows :—

- i. Keep the same subject, the most prominent person or thing, as the subject—not merely of the principal, but also, as far as possible, of the other clauses.
- ii. Let the principal clause express the principal idea, and the subordinate clauses the subordinate ideas, keeping the latter in the most logical order, which is often the same as the order of time.
- iii. When relatives are used, and they should be unsparingly, try and bring them as near to their antecedent as possible.

10. **Emphasis** will be obtained by attending to the following :—

- i. Keep the important words near the beginning and the end of clauses—the less important ones in the middle.
- ii. Put the principal verb at the close of the period, unless it be followed by a still more emphatic word or clause, as, for instance, often a clause expressing a Result will come after the main verb.

iii. Make as much use of antithesis as possible, and bring it out clearly—sometimes by the figure called Chiasmus (or inverted order of words).

ii. **Rhythm**, which depends on the ear, is less subject to rules, but the following may give some guidance :—

- i. Be very careful to balance your clauses, more than ever if there is any antithesis expressed in them.
- ii. Avoid bringing together too many long or too many short words, as they are better interspersed. However, very marked emphasis might, perhaps, involve the collocation of long words.
- iii. The Rhythm of the Period becomes most critical towards its conclusion. Metrical endings should be avoided, for instance, the trochaic word 'aūdīēbānt ;' would *ceteris paribus* give a better ending than pērcīpī | ēbānt.

Exercises.

PART THE FIRST.—THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

N.B.—1. The following exercises are intended *principally* to illustrate the **Large Print Rules** mentioned at the head of each exercise, and commonly a special reference is given to the notes when required. As is stated on page 1, all the **Rules with (*) prefixed** are presumed to be remembered when once they have been stated.

N.B.—2. The Recapitulations may be omitted in going through the exercises the first time.

Ex. 1 (R. 1-4).

1. A good father teaches his son much wisdom. 2. Cicero returned to Rome after a sad exile. 3. He had often written that he desired (se *with pres. infin.*) to return to Italy. 4. Alas! wretched me! I will conceal nothing from you, and will implore your mercy (*use postulo*, R. 4, Obs. 1). 5. Cæsar led his whole army across the Rubicon (*ib.*, Obs. 15). 6. Your friends think you wise (*ib.*, Obs. 4), but you are concealing the truth from them. 7. Numa was asked his opinion (*ib.*, Obs. 2) about the battle, but answered not a word (*say* nor answered a word). 8. He went joyfully (*say* joyful) to the country, and was there taught agriculture. 9. My friend presented me with her portrait, and I shall conceal it from other people (*ceteri*). 11. Socrates taught the world much wisdom, and all men declare him a martyr (R. 4, Obs. 4).

Ex. 2 (R. 1-6).

1. Cicero remained in exile one year, grieved much. 2. Sicily was a journey of three days by sea from Africa. 3. Cæsar surrounded the camp of the enemy with a troop of cavalry (R. 4, Obs. 3). 4. The child did wrong in concealing (*abl. of gerund*) his

fault from his own father. 5. You were taught philosophy at Athens (*abl.*) for three years (R. 4, Obs. 2). 6. He dreamed many dreams, and related them to his friends (*dat.*). 7. I seek from you a knowledge of the whole affair. 8. I will go home to Carthage after many banquets and other enjoyments. 9. Heavens above ! What folly ! What ignorance of the truth ! 10. The soldiers marched for three days, and [then] reached London.

Ex. 3 (R. 7-10).

1. The child is like his father, but not his mother. 2. He wished to help (*use infin. of juvo*) his friends when in danger (*use pres. partic. of periclitior*). 3. This, you see (R 9, Obs. 2), was their gratitude, a thing never to have been looked for (*gerundive of spero*). 4. He threw himself at my feet and implored pardon (R. 4, Obs. 1). 5. I envy you your good fortune. 6. Hannibal greatly benefitted the Carthaginians, but they [were] ungrateful [and] opposed him. 7. The Romans were accustomed, forsooth (scilicet), to war down the proud and to spare the conquered (*past. part. pass.*) 8. That man [is] to be considered unjust, for he assents to crime. 9. You must (debeo) not injure my reputation with my best friend. 10. He is named Felix, and he has it in his power to be happy (R. 10, Obs. ii.)

Ex. 4 (R. 11-13).

1. The general was much feared by the soldiers, on account of his severity. 2. Hasdrubal came with assistance to Hannibal, and fought near the Metaurus. 3. No one of our friends has performed greater exploits (R. 12, Obs. 3). 4. Hannibal met the Roman soldiers as they were crossing the Trebia. 5. The Republic, for which all good citizens must take counsel, is at stake (R. 12, Obs. 3). 6. The Consul appointed a day for holding the elections. 7. Cæsar had to do (*use gerundive*) everything at the same time. 8. To whom is it an advantage to set himself against the will of heaven ? 9. I am attending to (*say* is a care to me) the matter. 10. He sent five cohorts to Rome, as a defence for the city.

Ex. 5 (*Appendix I A*).

1. It is not necessary to obey unjust laws. 2. It was an advantage to me that I had been taught (quod *with plur. ind.*) music (R. 4, Obs. 2). 3. The Romans congratulated their Consul who had not despaired (*plur. subj.*) of the Republic. 4. To command men who are in despair requires (*say* is the part of) a great leader. 5. Mæcenas protected Horace when he was in poverty, and afterwards received much honour from him. 6. Hannibal allowed his soldiers much liberty at Capua, which (quod) hindered another victory. 7. Deianira did not intend to injure her husband when she gave (cum *with perf. indic.*) him a tunic steeped in the Centaur's blood. 8. He was accustomed to resist the injustice of the citizens with all his might. 9. I am not satisfied about the wisdom of your course. 10. It will be to your advantage to take the advice of your best friend.

Ex. 6 (*Appendix I B*).

1. It is certain that Cæsar was aiming at (quod *with impt. indic.*) kingly power. 2. Be consistent with yourself, even when in difficulties. 3. It is the interest of the child to obey its father. 4. There is a difference between pleasure and happiness. 5. He foresaw misfortune and provided for the consequences. 6. To all else was added the desire of Catiline (*use accus. and infin.*) to become Consul. 7. Beware of cowardice while you take precautions for your safety. 8. There is a difference between consulting (*pres. infin.*) a friend and consulting the interests of a friend. 9. We are agreed (*use impersonal constr.*) to refrain from usury, but not to spare the usurers (*use tempore twice*). 10. I met (convenio) my brother who had been present at the triumphal procession.

Ex. 7 (*Recapitulation*).

1. It is useless to envy the good fortune of others. 2. Horace returned to the country (R. 1, Obs. 1) weary of the tumult and distraction of the city. 3. Hannibal, pretending a defeat, led his forces across the Trebia (R. 4, Obs. 5). 4. I hoped to benefit you, but perhaps I did you harm (R. 9). 5. The captives threw

themselves at the feet of Metellus. 6. He tried to injure his enemy by indulging (*abl. of gerund*) [him] too much. 7. To spare the conquered was the boast of the ancient Romans. 8. I am not afraid of you, but I am afraid for you. 9. It is certain he was first asked his opinion. 10. His ignorance was an impediment to the transaction (R. 13, Obs. 3).

Ex. 8 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Cæsar ordered his soldiers to surround the city with a rampart (*in two different ways*). 2. Babylon is many days' distant from the sea (R. 5, Obs. 1). 3. It is not easy to satisfy the passions (App. 1. A) when aroused. 4. There is a difference between being afraid of a person (*aliquis*) and being afraid for a person (App. 1. B). 5. I congratulate you on (de) your great victory. 6. Sulla, whose surname was Felix, made many good laws for the Romans (R. 10, Obs. 1). 7. Alas! wretched me! Much has that mistake injured me (R. 6). 8. For five years (R. 5) I have been absent, and now I have just returned home. 9. He was less in favour with his own people than with strangers (R. 9). 10. The horse was given as an assistance, not as an amusement (R. 13).

Ex. 9 (R. 14. 17).

1. It is the part of a wise man to despise trifles. 2. By my help alone the Republic was saved from utter ruin (*use fut. part. of perio*). 3. Scipio is well known to have been a man of eloquence among the Romans. 4. Hector, the son of Priam, was dragged seven times round the walls of Troy. 5. Socrates was unjustly condemned by his fellow-citizens to the penalty of death. 6. It is certain (*Appendix 1. B*) that he was accused (*use illum with perf. infin.*) of bribery and corruption. 7. The whole human race is condemned to death. 8. Cicero accused Verres of avarice and effrontery. 9. The care of things not belonging to one is an obstacle (R. 9) to peace of mind. 10. Cæsar sent, as a guide to his soldiers, a man acquainted with (*peritus*) those localities.

Ex. 10 (R. 18-21).

1. I am ashamed of your levity rather than of my own anxiety.
2. What matter did it make to me (R. 19, Obs. 1) that you should acquit me of lying? (R. 17).
3. He informed the citizens of his intention to sack the city (of the city being sacked—*genitive of gerundive*).
4. You remember many things (R. 18, Obs. 2) although much time has elapsed (*perf. ind.*)
5. I lived many years at Athens.
6. Tullia speedily inspired (*say filled*) the young man with her own rash daring.
7. Italy was once filled with the followers of Pythagoras.
8. The boy was free from vice, but wanting in prudence.
9. It is pleasant to pass some idle hours in the country.
10. It was a matter of much labour to teach the boy his grammar.

Ex. 11 (*Recapitulation on the Genitive*).

1. Sulla was covetous of another's [property], prodigal of his own.
2. The Senate neither freed him of the charge nor convicted him.
3. It is for the benefit of the State (R. 19) to inflict capital punishment on malefactors.
4. It is not everyone (R. 15, Obs. 2, ii.) who can live at Athens.
5. I am weary and disgusted with the customs of the citizens.
6. Enough of folly! (R. 15, Obs. 4). I am ashamed of you.
7. The city of Rome ruled the world for many ages (R. 5, ii.)
8. Cicero considered himself a man of merit among the Romans.
9. He acquainted me with his design.
10. You are accustomed to remember nothing except injuries (R. 18, Obs. 2).

Ex. 12 (R. 22-25).

1. The people summoned Numa from Cures to reign (*ad with acc. of gerund*) at Rome (*say to Rome*).
2. Apollo was the son (natus) of Jove and Latona.
3. Violence and fraud are both foreign to the man.
4. Cæsar had cut off the supplies of the enemy (*say the enemy from supplies*).
5. We are in dire need of immediate help (R. 24, Obs. 2).
6. I abstained without difficulty from wine and condiments.
7. Lucius Brutus freed the State from the tyranny of kings (*say kingly*).
8. He had suddenly come to Rome from the country owing to a mistake.
9. Cæsar considered it sufficient

(satis) at the present (hic) time to restrain the enemy from rapine and plunder. 10. At Brundisium I met your brother on his departure (*use partic.*) from Italy.

Ex. 13 (R. 26-31).

1. You declared that P. Clodius was slain by my advice. 2. He drove the enemy away by means of violent threatening (pl.) 3. I promise you this, Quirites, in good faith. 4. For that matter I shall make use of your promised aid. 5. By the Julian law citizenship was granted to the allies and the Latins. 6. He was warned by his brother of (about) the imminent danger. 7. They considered [it] safer to enjoy a bloodless victory (*say* without any wound). 8. The man was wounded with a sword: he was journeying with his companions. 9. The more you teach him wisdom the more he will practise it (R. 30, Obs. 2). 10. It is [the duty of] a good citizen to be content with just laws.

Ex. 14 (*Recapitulation on the Ablative*).

1. The more they understand the new constitution, the less they desire to adopt it. 2. The dictator was a curule magistrate, endowed with the highest power [in the State]. 3. He beat his slave with a stick, and then accused him of the crime. 4. He was arrested with letters addressed to the enemy. 5. The method of Socrates required constant practice in asking questions. 6. Your father, unlike you, was a man of probity and honour. 7. He preferred to enjoy his country villa, being free from the cares of office. 8. The ancient Britons used to live (feed) on milk, cheese, and flesh. 9. The mind is endowed with a spark of divine fire. 10. We ought to practice simplicity in the manner of the ancient Romans (R. 29, ii.)

Ex. 15 (R. 32-35).

1. The statue was made at Corinth, a luxurious city. 2. Cæsar pitched his camp on rising ground. 3. It is to our interest to wage war by land and sea. 4. In his old age he wrote a beautiful treatise about friendship. 5. He approached the rampart of the enemy on

horse-back, and demanded a surrender (*infn. of verb*). 6. These things were going on during many months in Sicily. 7. At home and abroad he gained the reputation of honesty. 8. Through the whole camp the rumour of the general's murder was believed. 9. At Syracuse the tyrant was beloved, at Athens he was hated. 10. At my house you will be always welcome with your friends.

Ex. 16 (R. 32-38).

1. After seven months the city was taken by storm. 2. Catiline did not value the life of Roman citizens at a farthing. 3. Twenty days after he came to Thebes, he was accused of theft. 4. At Thebes, a city of Bœotia, there was much hatred of democracy. 5. They determined that he should be put to death (*pres. infn.*) within seven days. 6. In his late boyhood he went to Athens, a subject city. 7. The war was being waged in Spain with vigour both by land and sea. 8. In his boyhood he was taught philosophy at Athens. 9. On the same horse he rode up to the ranks of the enemy. 10. What you don't want is sometimes offered at very little (R. 38, ii.).

Ex. 17 (*Recapitulation on the Locative*).

1. Through the whole camp wailing was heard by night and by day. 2. Were there good Tribunes of the Plebs at Rome within these twenty years? 3. At Mycenæ, a city of Argolis, Agamemnon ruled over the Achæans. 4. In his early youth he showed great promise of bravery. 5. Three days after the sally (*verb*), a great battle was fought. 6. My father did not value the beauty of the body at a straw. 7. In his youth he promised to be a constant enemy of the Roman name. 8. We happened to be in the country after fifteen years (R. 33, Obs. 1). 9. In Cæsar's house there was great luxury not without good taste. 10. They all left the city with one garment apiece within four days.

Ex. 18 (R. 39-42).

1. The general of the Belgians was rather fortunate than brave. 2. He had made a speech about the extortion of Verres rather longer than usual. 3. There were no soldiers more brave than the

followers of Leonidas. 4. I have not climbed a higher mountain than this. 5. The book is too learned for the knowledge of the readers. 6. Women are naturally rather vehement. 7. The boy will be many inches taller than his father. 8. A speech, when it is too long, will probably weary the hearers. 9. The war was concluded victoriously sooner than was hoped by the citizens. 10. You have often heard that the size (*use magnitudo*) of the moon is many times less than [that] of the sun.

Ex. 19 (R. 39-42, *with* § xxviii. c).

1. Having been sent to the general with a letter he was absent longer than was expected. 2. He is beneath contempt. 3. A child more than usually foolish will hardly be a wise man. 4. The serpent was many feet longer than this stick. 5. He performed the task with more haste than diligence. 6. A wound when it is too deep will be difficult to be cured (*use the supine*). 7. I saw nothing in Greece more beautiful than the pictures of Apelles. 8. The shield was too heavy for the strength of the man. 9. I should have more difficulty (*use adverb*) in persuading you than my father. 10. This book is too long for me.

Ex. 20 (§ xxviii. c and D).

1. Philosophy is [a] very bad [subject] for a young man to learn. 2. He did the work in the best way he could. 3. He finished the work as quickly as possible. 4. He is above envy. 5. All the oldest men in the city were required to join the expedition. 6. The excellent Murena invited us all to supper. 7. My dear friend Cato promised to consider the matter as closely as possible. 8. The enemy appeared marching up the hill more quickly than was expected. 9. Children are as different from one another as possible. 10. The battle was fought with more courage than success.

Ex. 21 (*Recapitulation*).

1. What is harder than a rock, or softer than water? 2. After seven years he died lamented (flebilis, R. 12, i.) by none more than by you. 3. All things were more rapid for Hasdrubal than he

himself and others had hoped (R. 40, Obs. 3). 4. According to the opinion of all he was eloquent rather than learned. 5. The rest of the space (R. 15, Obs. 2. ii.) was not less than 600 feet (R. 41, Obs. 3). 6. The new house was six feet higher than the old one (R. 42, Obs. 1). 7. The house was too small for the number of those calling (*saluto*). 8. I have seen no one more crafty than Phormio (R. 39). 9. He came to the assistance of the soldiers (R. 13, Obs. 1 and Obs. 3) later than was hoped by all (R. 40, Obs. 3). 10. He was condemned to die (R. 38, Obs. 3), and showed no more courage than a weak woman.

Ex. 22 (*Recapitulation on the Cases*).

1. The more you try to persuade him of your honesty the more he suspects you. 2. Three years after he went to Athens, he was beaten to death with a sword. 3. He is a man of simplicity, and enjoys a good reputation (*say* is considered such). 4. At Syracuse, a Dorian city, the Athenians lost their empire. 5. In his early manhood he was taught philosophy at Athens for two years. 6. Through the whole camp the soldiers murmured against their general. 7. The wise do not care a straw (R. 38, i.) for vulgar popularity. 8. The Romans conquered the Carthaginians both by land and sea. 9. He promised to finish the poem within six months. 10. After six months he showed himself to be a general worthy of his family.

Ex. 23 (*Recapitulation on the Cases*).

1. Wisdom cannot be bought for nothing (R. 38, Obs. 1). 2. I am tired of the attempt to teach you some prudence. 3. The sea was infested with pirates who had forgotten all humanity. 4. It is not everyone who can live happily (*say* happy) in the country (R. 15. Obs. 2. ii.). 5. Pompey freed the Mediterranean sea of pirates. 6. The more you are in need (*fut. indic.*) of friends, the fewer you will have (R. 30, Obs. 2). 7. He sent his son to trade at Ephesus. 8. He fell to the ground with a crash and injured his thigh (R. 2, Obs. 1). 9. Cæsar wished to prevent the enemy from retreating (*noun*). 10. It is not to my interest to teach the boy vice.

Ex. 24 (*Recapitulation on the Cases*).

1. All things succeeded better with him than he had hoped.
2. Athens was many times richer than Sparta.
3. I never saw anyone (quisquam) more beautiful than Cleopatra.
4. The battle was too bloody for the number of the combatants.
5. He lived for seven years despised (R. 12, i.) by none more than by his own [followers].
6. It is for the interest of the State to have just and equal laws.
7. Cicero was too vain, and often appeared ridiculous.
8. The soldiers were disgusted with the lingering of Fabius.
9. You do not remember the severe defeat of Cannæ.
10. He hated all and was greatly hated by all (R. 13, ii.)

Ex. 25 (R. 43-45).

1. On account of fear he delayed too long.
2. The battle was fought near (R. 45, Obs. 2) the Roman camp.
3. So far I have tried to amuse you, but henceforth I shall be serious.
4. As far as the sea the pestilence spread among the peoples of Italy.
5. The camp was distant from the town about three miles (R. 45, Obs. 4).
6. Cæsar advanced cautiously up to (subter) the camp of the enemy.
7. I spoke openly before the Senate, having been asked my opinion.
8. I could hardly speak for joy.
9. They have been labouring with us for many years.
10. Cæsar compelled the captives to pass under the yoke as a sign of subjection.

Ex. 26 (§ xxviii. E).

1. In the course of the work I asked Cicero many questions.
2. We hope to have a prosperous voyage with the help of heaven.
3. The soldiers walked straight into the ambuscade, and were killed to a man.
4. With all my heart I forgive you, and will try to forget the whole matter.
5. The orator making a long and tiresome speech said little or nothing to the purpose.
6. After the manner of foreigners he allowed himself to be cheated in the forum.
7. When dying he left his grandson heir to his whole estate.
8. The soldiers seeing their comrades safe could hardly speak for joy.
9. In Cæsar's Commentaries you will find many thoughtful remarks about the rules of strategy.
10. Cato often spoke to this effect in the senate-house about the danger of Carthage.

Ex. 27 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Horace received a villa from Mæcenas near the Digentia.
2. He lived to a great age beyond his own expectation.
3. It is certain that he intended to make me heir to all his possessions.
4. Hercules, seeing the condition of his family, could hardly do anything for excitement.
5. It was in favour of the Romans that (quod *with indic.*) they had many military outposts in the North of Italy.
6. They sailed right up to the rocks, and to a man perished.
7. Cæsar was proceeding towards the city of the enemy in good marching order.
8. Those who could not walk were left behind with the baggage.
9. With all our heart we hope you may have a prosperous voyage (*say with have, fut. infin.*)
10. After his consulship he went to Brundisium on account of his health.

Ex. 28 (R. 46-48).

1. We have heard that saying of Socrates—that he knew his own ignorance better than other men.
2. The great Hannibal was ill-treated by his own [countrymen].
3. Hardly anybody (§ xxviii. E) did more for his country than Scipio Africanus.
4. He did not fall into the same mistake as the other consul.
5. Everyone loves his own children better than those of another (R. 48, Obs. 3).
6. I do not require a master, I teach myself the art of persuading.
7. That wretched Helen brought great woes on the Greeks and the Trojans.
8. Such is your clemency, you will certainly spare the fallen (§ xxviii F).
9. That is rashness, not courage, a very different quality of the mind.
10. Those whom we love we also wish to see acting wisely (§ xxviii. F).

Ex. 29 (R. 49-51).

1. One of my friends asked me to go to his house.
2. It is not lawful for any magistrate to scourge a Roman citizen.
3. Who would say that any man could act more harshly than Verres?
4. Anyone may (*use licet*) dispose of his own property according to his will.
5. A slave of mine saw the defendant strike (*pres. infin.*) the first blow.
6. He would not tell his real sentiments to any of his friends.
7. Some one may say that this is (*pres. indic.*) per-

fectly incredible. 8. One would like to live for many years at Athens (R. 50, Obs. 1, ii.) 9. They hated one another on account of their large possessions. 10. He wished to die for our sake, but the greater part of us refused to allow him.

Ex. 30 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Some men indulge one propensity, some another. 2. I heard speeches for six years at Athens, and not inferior ones either. 3. Julius Cæsar was the first to call himself emperor. 4. A friend of mine crossed over to Britain three years after he settled in Gaul. 5. The illustrious Metellus was a member of a plebeian family. 6. Any father of a family would grieve (*imperf. subj.*) to hear such news (things). 7. It is not for my interest that any of these matters should be publicly spoken about. 8. The things which we see we also wish to possess. 9. Hardly anyone could have known (*plup. subj.*) that he is a great orator. 10. Will anyone, within a hundred years (R. 36), suffer such a cruel fate as (tam . . . quam) this?

Ex. 31 (*Recapitulation*).

1. The oratory of Pericles was more impassioned than that of any Athenian. 2. Any sort of treatment is good enough for such a vile criminal. 3. He felt that he had (se *with pres. infin.*) still some strength remaining. 4. A citizen of Rome (R. 50) made a long voyage of discovery. 5. There is no man without some feeling. 6. One might think that such a disease were worse than death. 7. Does any one hope to live for ever? 8. He never gave advice to the purpose to any of his friends. 9. Some one may say that I am bound to help the defendant by all the means in my power. 10. That experience of his might have been the lot of anyone.

Ex. 32 (§ xxviii. F).

1. Some gain knowledge from books, others from their own experience. 2. The great Marcellus was justly called the Sword of Rome, but was not a good general. 3. He fought many battles, and those, too, not insignificant ones. 4. There are but few who can control their tongue in times of excitement. 5. He offered me the most precious stone he possessed. 6. Hardly anyone hoped

that Fabius would himself recover (*fut. infin.*) Tarentum. 7. Those persons whom we love we also trust. 8. A good speech, it is true, but too long, in my opinion. 9. Without any experience he undertook a difficult and dangerous enterprise. 10. It is not every woman who could endure that sight without flinching.

Ex. 33 (*Recapitulation*).

1. The Persians destroyed the most sacred places in the possession of (*use verb*) the Greeks. 2. The celebrated Crassus was one of the richest men at Rome. 3. No one ever made a juster defence than Socrates. 4. I hope that your brother and you will come to my house in the country (R. 2, Obs. 1). 5. Someone may say that it is foolish to forgive an enemy. 6. Does any one think that it is foolish to forgive an enemy? 7. It is not wise to forgive every enemy. 8. Some go one way, some another. 9. Fabius was not the first who conquered the enemy by delaying. 10. How few there were who thought (*imperf. subj.*) that Hannibal would be driven (*fut. infin.*) out of Italy.

Ex. 34 (R. 52-55).

1. I have been long intending to take you with me to Athens. 2. The Consul proceeded to lead the army in close order up the hill (R. 44). 3. If we do our duty in all things (R. 55, i.) we shall receive a blessing from the gods (*say* the gods will love us). 4. Socrates used to ask the Athenians many questions about themselves (R. 48). 5. He said that he had remained (R. 54, Obs. 2) too long in the field (R. 34, Obs. 2). 6. You may (*licet*) lead your troops across the river (R. 4, Obs. 5) when you can (R. 55, i.) 7. He said that he was hoping (R. 52, Obs. 2) to surround the enemy's camp with a rampart. 8. For a long time you have ceased acting upon my advice. 9. He began to doubt if (*utrum*) anyone (R. 49, ii.) remained (*imperf. subj.*) within the camp. 10. He was trying to persuade me to go to Rome within three days.

Ex. 35 (R. 56-61).

1. He could never be persuaded that the gods act wrongly. 2. The city of the Bellovaci was taken (R. 56) by Cæsar after three months. 3. We must not indulge our passions excessively. 4. The

battle was fought (R. 57, Obs. 1) with ferocity on both sides. 5. The good man can be, and often is, injured by his enemies. 6. But now, if you please, let us depart (*pass.*) from the provinces and return (*pass.*) to the city. 7. Everyone wishes to be believed by his friends. 8. I myself certainly cannot be injured by those men. 9. The Latin legions were taught the Roman methods of warfare by their long alliance. 10. It follows that you made a great mistake in reference to the Samnite War.

Ex. 36 (R. 56-62).

1. Socrates merited to be considered a great teacher of men. 2. They promised to take the letters secretly to their own chieftains. 3. They ought to have persuaded their leader to abstain from violence. 4. Cæsar hoped to prove to the Romans the justice and clemency of his rule. 5. I am surprised that you do not sell that farm at a high price (R. 38, Obs. 1). 6. I wished to become more learned than the rest of men. 7. They ought to have been put to death for their enormous crimes (R. 26, iii.) 8. I hope that this will be added (accedit, R. 62, Obs. 2) to you. 9. He thought that the boy would grow to a great size. 10. It is manifest that Socrates ought to have been acquitted by his judges.

Ex. 37 (*Recapitulation*).

1. I have long been intending (R. 52, Obs. 1) to journey to Corinth, a city famous for art. 2. He should have been long since condemned to death. 3. Was it not your duty to make some sacrifice for your country? 4. I believe that you will recover (R. 62, Obs. 3) with the help of heaven (§ xxviii. k). 5. This could have been done while the opportunity lasted. 6. He might have been persuaded to give battle at early dawn. 7. Do you hope that the queen will be preserved from the enemy? 8. Will you never cease from saying (R. 61, ii.) that this is possible? 9. He hoped to have a prosperous voyage (R. 62, ii.) 10. I was always surprised that Socrates was condemned to death by his judges.

Ex. 38 (R. 63-66).

1. Cæsar routed the enemy, and drove them into their own camp. 2. While searching for books, I came upon some old poems

of yours. 3. Masinissa, when in his 81st year, appeared on horseback at the head of his troops. 4. Having said these things, he left the senate-house full of fury. 5. There is great need of deliberation, for the State has come into peril of its very existence. 6. When I besought him to have pity on the captives he replied that it was impossible (*say* could not be, *pres. infin.*). 7. Those willing (R. 64, Obs. 2) to die for their country are not to be pitied (*nom. of gerundive*) by us (R. 12, ii.) 8. He caught the man and led him immediately before the city *Prætor*. 9. Going to Athens he studied philosophy for three years. 10. He spoke words of comfort to the dying man (R. 66, i.)

Ex. 39. (*Recapitulation*).

1. While listening to the speeches of Cæsar, I forgot that he was (*pres. infin.*) a tyrant. 2. He ought to have been put to death after a legal trial. 3. When I asked him the nature of the offence, he replied that he knew nothing about the matter. 4. He wished to help the enemies of Rome by treachery. 5. I hope that the city will be taken, nay that it is about to be taken. 6. He cannot be believed by anyone. 7. It is certain that this will soon come about (*contingit*). 8. Those intending to do their duty have no cause for fear. 9. He captured the camp and handed it over to his soldiers for plunder. 10. Going to your country house, you will enjoy complete rest from your labours.

Ex. 40 (R. 67-69).

1. When the cavalry were ordered to ride round, the foot-soldiers made an attack. 2. A witness was brought forward who, after serving in 27 campaigns, tore open his garment, and showed his back torn with scourges. 3. The general remained quiet as though the Romans were not going to invade his territory. 4. Having prayed the gods for a safe voyage, he set sail. 5. It was decreed that after casting lots (R. 69, Obs. 3, i.) they should be sent to their provinces. 6. Having discovered the mistake he fled from the society of men. 7. He gave the signal for battle, not yet having heard whether the contingents had arrived (*plup. subj.* R. 69, Obs. 3, ii.) 8. While the first tribe was recording its vote,

the tribunes were urging the other tribes to do their duty. 9. He started for Rome not having yet discovered the name of his enemy. 10. Having done these things, he laid himself down to die.

Ex. 41 (*Recapitulation*).

1. He found the enemy and challenged them to fight. 2. Without taking the auspices or pouring libations they commenced the battle. 3. Having given back the book to the owner, he quickly left the house. 4. Those hoping for a revolution were the first to join the [party of] Catiline. 5. Returning home he fell sick and was like to die. 6. When I upbraided him with his evil courses he replied that I was myself to blame. 7. He felt secure of victory as though fortune were not about to desert him. 8. Having been asked his opinion he replied that the matter needed caution. 9. Having given his opinion he asked his opponent to reply. 10. The army was assembling while the Consul was sacrificing to the gods.

Ex. 42 (§ xxviii. A).

1. I hope that you will take it in good part. 2. After the banishment of Tarquinius, the Romans were for the most part less subject to tyranny. 3. It is no small advantage to me to have a knife to cut with. 4. After the taking of Troy by the Greeks, Æneas was in anxious suspense on his father's account. 5. It is said that he carried him on his back from the flames of the city of Troy. 6. The son, after finishing the slaughter, threw himself at his father's feet. 7. He went to the senate-house in Rome and made a long speech. 8. When I am questioned (R. 63), I will reply in words of that sort. 9. I might have been persuaded long ago to make the same promises. 10. A man of that age, being asked his opinion, might have taken it in good part.

Ex. 43 (§ xxviii. B).

1. If your father opposes (*abl. abs.*), you ought not to do this every second day. 2. You have now been in my debt for a year. 3. Before the Consulship of Cicero, there were dangerous plots at Rome. 4. In broad day he left the city, and returned towards

night-fall. 5. There has not been such a glorious victory for our arms within the memory of man. 6. Henceforth every fifth day I must go (R. 55) to the country late at night. 7. At the suggestion of your friend, you should see the doctor once in ten days. 8. Being about 25 years of age, he went to Delphi, an oracle of Apollo. 9. Without anyone perceiving it, he had been absent from home about three days. 10. It is many years since I first met you at Puteoli.

Ex. 44 (R. 70-71).

1. We must hope in the gods above all human aid. 2. We must, however, not despise human aid but make use of it. 3. He accuses me of having proposed (*say* as the proposer of) Cæsar's murder. 4. The general devoted himself to urging the soldiers to a final effort. 5. Now, my son, I must give you the following peice of advice. 6. Now farewell, for while you have to take your walk, I have to take my nap. 7. Honour is ever to be paid to those who have died for their country. 8. This plan tends to the ruin of the State, the murder of citizens, the blotting out of the name of Rome (§ xxviii. K). 9. It is foolish to act unjustly, even for the sake of acquiring a large fortune. 10. The principle of showing gratitude is implanted in our breasts by heaven.

Ex. 45 (R. 72-76).

1. Do not accuse a friend of treachery without good cause. 2. Would that I could again enjoy the happy days of my youth! 3. Let us die and rush into arms. 4. Never disobey the laws of your country. 5. Beware of going too near danger without necessity or use. 6. May I persuade you to forgive this simple fault in the case of an old friend. 7. Grant that old age is pleasant, yet it will not last for long (*say* be lasting). 8. May I lose my head, if I am as guilty as (tam . . . quam) you suppose. 9. Do not think that by delaying you can cure the evil. 10. I should like you to take counsel for yourself first, and secondly for you friends.

Ex. 46 (R. 77-81).

1. Did he not promise unwillingly to do your bidding? 2. Do you grant that we should unwisely surrender the city to this force? I do. 3. Why should I ask any further questions? the matter is.

quite plain. 4. Was that doctrine first taught by Socrates or Plato? 5. Was any general more full of resources than Hannibal? [No.] 6. How long will you continue to make the same foolish statement? 7. Is it more deplorable to be injured by another than to injure another? 8. Where was I to turn? my enemies were pressing in upon me from all sides. 9. How many years were you residing in Asia with a view to restoring your health? 10. What shall I answer to my accusers? the danger of silence is the worst of all.

Ex. 47 (*Recapitulation*—R. 72-81).

1. What were you to do? your difficulties were very great (*use* vessor, to be in). 2. Beware of seeming to be wiser than you really are. 3. Do not hesitate to ask me for a great boon. 4. How many soldiers did you see advancing up the hill in the early morning? 5. Is it not the part of a wise man to be intent on acting justly even to his own cost? 6. Do not vie with the enemies of Athens in seeking to injure her. 7. At what price is corn selling in the market-place? It is worth little or nothing. 8. Why should I say more? The charge is complete, and it only remains now for the judges to give an impartial verdict (*say* justly). 9. Is it not better to die happily than to live miserably? 10. Is it better to live miserably than to die happily?

Ex. 48 (§ xxviii. G).

1. Do not knowingly disobey the laws of the State. 2. I shall get the house built as soon as possible. 3. I don't like to persuade you to act contrary to your own judgment. 4. I was at leisure to visit your friend late at night (§ xxviii. B). 5. It is universally admitted that Socrates was unjustly put to death owing to the enmity of his judges. 6. I must needs ask many questions daily. 7. I do nothing else but study philosophy from day to day. 8. I shall never be persuaded to act contrary to my conscience. 9. Unwittingly he got the slave punished. 10. I cannot but hope that the house will be built before the end of the year.

Ex. 49 (§ xxviii. H).

1. A Roman citizen could receive a crown for the honour of saving the life of a citizen. 2. In spite of all Hannibal could do,

the Carthaginians were remiss in sending him support. 3. I have the greatest difficulty in believing that he meant to defraud the state. 4. To condemn a citizen without a hearing was generally considered unjust at Athens. 5. The ambassadors ought not to have returned home without accomplishing anything. 6. Much has been carried down the stream without his perceiving it. 7. A Roman citizen could not be scourged without violating the laws. 8. He made many promises without accomplishing them. 9. It is certain that you will fight many battles without making any progress. 10. Without his father's knowledge, he has been in my debt for three years.

Ex. 50 (§ xxviii. K).

1. I began to think of all your kindness when too late. 2. What's the use? To threaten me with death is beside the mark. 3. The affair is still undecided, but I am wholly at your mercy. 4. It does not at all terrify me to be in your debt. 5. The building of the house cost him a large sum of money. 6. To stir an inch will not tend to the preservation of your liberty. 7. He is a perfect gentleman, and we ought to assist him as much as we possibly can. 8. To be brief, it was all over with the defendant. 9. No sooner said than done: he punished the men, women, and children (*say* inflicted punishment on). 10. How does it matter to you? The victory did not cost you much bloodshed.

Ex. 51 (*Recapitulation*).

1. We must not die unavenged. 2. He accuses his friend of secretly undermining his influence. 3. The principle of seeking justice before all else is not new. 4. Did he really wish to offer his life for his country? [No.] 5. How long will you continue to deceive me without gaining any advantage? 6. Why should I ask your aid? It is all over with me, so to speak. 7. What was I to do next? The man threatened me with death. 8. Why should I say more? You are completely at my mercy. 9. How many men did the victory cost Hannibal? 10. Is death worse than dishonour?—is dishonour worse than death?

Ex. 52 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Do not fear that this tends to the ruin of the state.
2. Beware of asking too many questions of a fool.
3. Is it not the part of a brave man to prefer death to slavery? (§ xxviii. K).
4. I cannot but think that you did it (*accus. with perf. inf.*) unwittingly.
5. Would that I could learn the name of my benefactor (*use verb*)!
6. Would that I had not omitted to thank him for preserving my life!
7. We ought not to neglect the interests of our best friends.
8. What matter does it make to you that I was away (*accus. with perf. infin.*) from home for seven years?
9. He could never be persuaded that Socrates would be condemned.
10. The general hopes that his soldiers will recover (R. 62, Obs. 2) within three months.

Ex. 53 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Where was I to turn? I did nothing (§ xxviii. G) but run away.
2. Do not think that Socrates will ever be persuaded to act unjustly.
3. We must hope that he will begin to think of his country.
4. While drinking (R. 71, Obs. 4) he bethought him of having made that promise.
5. Cæsar turned to exhorting the soldiers with all his power.
6. The defendant ought not to have been condemned to death without a hearing.
7. He might be condemned to death without violating the laws.
8. It is certain that you will return to Pompeii without affecting anything.
9. Without my knowledge do not stir a single hair's breadth.
10. God forbid. It were a pity that you should take all that trouble without effecting anything.

END OF EXERCISES ON PART THE FIRST.

Exercises.

PART THE SECOND.—THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

Ex. 54 (R. 82-83).

1. I have said all this, in order that you may understand my terrible anxiety. 2. I had intended to march straightway against the enemy, that we might take him unawares. 3. There are [some] who think that the earth is many times greater than the sun. 4. He was pretending to be ill, in order that he might not serve in the army. 5. It is not the part of a wise man to praise another in order to be praised by him [in return.] 6. He told many falsehoods (§ xxviii. A) about his country, that he might conceal his nationality. 7. I hope to bring it about that we shall have corn cheap in Rome. 8. Strive to conquer yourself, and you will better conquer your enemies. 9. Cicero took care that the Romans knew his worth (*use adj.*) 10. He threatened those with death (§ xxvii. K) who should reveal the secret.

Ex 55 (82-84).

1. There were [some] who did nothing but run away (§ xxviii. G). 2. I know that you wished to help me three years ago. 3. I knew that you were wondering (*pres. infin.*) what I was doing. 4. I think I have sufficiently told you what I know. 5. I think I have sufficiently told you what I learnt when I was young. 6. So rapidly had they marched that they [actually] came on the enemy unprepared (R. 84, Obs. 2). 7. I had no doubt that you would do all I asked (R. 84, Obs. 3). 8. He promised a large reward to those who should first arrive at the city. 9. He has done the task quickly to earn the reward. 10. I hoped that you would hear what we were doing.

Ex. 56 (R. 85-87).

1. It is uncertain whether they will be discovered in spite of all the consuls can do (§ xxviii. H). 2. Is it difficult to decide whether Socrates was justly condemned or not? 3. I by no means agree with those who think virtue (*say* to live virtuously) impossible. 4. I do not know whether to refuse or accept the gift. 5. It matters little whether we fight by land or by sea. 6. I was in doubt what he was doing, and he was himself in doubt what he should do (*Write also the direct form in each member*: R. 87). 7. I rather think you are right in saying that we are loved by the gods. 8. The child was wondering when his father would return from the country. 9. I did not know where to turn, so I sailed down the stream (§ xxxviii. H). 10. I cannot be persuaded that you are free from a sort of anxiety.

Ex. 57 (*Recapitulation*.)

1. Do not ask me how many lives the victory cost us. 2. The just man will take care not to be in anyone's debt (§ xxviii. B). 3. Did you inform the general of the full extent of the disaster? [No.] 4. There were [some] who asked whether the tidings were certain. 5. He made many promises, so that he deceived many. 6. He promised to keep those who should strive with all their might (R. 84. & § xxviii. K.) 7. I hope to bring it about that we should be praised by the Consuls. 8. I do not know what to do next, and am in anxious suspense (§ xxviii. A). 9. You surely are not wondering whether I spoke the truth? 10. I hope I have sufficiently explained how much is wanting to the efficiency of the army.

Ex. 58 (*Recapitulation*).

1. What do you want? Do you ask what I want? I rather think you ought to know. 2. It does not matter whether you get it done or not. 3. Did you doubt whether the gods exist or not? 4. I thought your slave seemed somewhat ashamed to reply to my questions (R. 63 & § xxviii. F). 5. I have often asked how many lessons you learnt day by day. 6. He wished to know how many wars had been fought from the foundation of Rome (§ xxviii. B).

7. He was in doubt whom to address first in words of that kind (§ xxviii. A). 8. Cicero thought it a difficult question whether new friends are to be preferred to old. 9. To such an extent had they differed that it was impossible to reconcile them [*actual fact*]. 10. You ought not to have been in doubt whether I loved you or not.

Ex. 59. (R. 88-90).

1. We know that custom, which is a second nature, is often pleaded as an excuse. 2. The general informs them that he is expecting a body of men who are fully armed (R. 84, Obs. 1). 3. He said he was the first who had read the poem. 4. He expected to lead his troops across the Trebia, which flows with a strong current (R. 89). 5. Livius praised the soldiers for having made an extraordinarily rapid march. 6. He punished one of his slaves severely because he had, as he said, neglected his duty (R. 90, Obs. 2). 7. The master loved his pupil because he was quick at learning. 8. It is certain that the man and all his possessions (*verb*) will be lost. 9. It is commonly reported that the man was killed when he was on the point of leaving the house 10. He was condemned to death for betraying his trust.

Ex. 60 (*Recapitulation*).

1. He said that he knew what was necessary for the expedition. 2. Can you tell me whether the slave threw himself at his master's feet? 3. Hannibal made a point (§ xxvii. G.) of laying seige to Saguntum, which was a city friendly to the Romans 4. He could not be persuaded to come, because he was, as he said, afraid of the climate. 5. It is universally admitted (§ xxviii. G.) that Socrates had said many things which had displeased the Athenians. 6. They say that Hannibal, while his father was yet alive, swore to make war on Rome (R. 89, Obs. 1). 7. Do you doubt that the gods will help you, if you are faithful to them? 8. The father praised his son for telling the truth to his own cost. 9. They orderd them to launch all the boats which were ready to put to sea. 10. Did you know that you were speaking to James who is the son of a king?

Ex. 61. (R. 91-93).

1. The Belgians sent ambassadors to Cæsar to ask him to spare their territory. 2. I cannot but fear that letter will be received too late. 3. It was owing to you that I did not get the house built (§ xxviii. G). 4. I said that I feared the boy would be burnt to death. 5. Take care that you make all the preparations for a great and decisive battle. 6. He never prevented me from speaking my mind. 7. Let them depart provided they take nothing with them but two garments apiece. 8. He sent the man on horseback that he might be the more certain (R. 91, iii.) to arrive at Thebes in time. 9. Are we obliged to fear that the gods are ever angry with us? 10. He ordered the military tribunes to speak to the soldiers, for the sake of animating them to fight.

(Ex. 62 (R. 91-95).

1. He ordered the slaves not to be so long in carrying home the produce of the farm. 2. They were so slow in carrying out the order that the master could no longer keep his temper. 3. There is no one but can tell you how many men the victory cost. 4. Modesty effects that one is respected by all (*say* men make much of one distinguished by, &c.) 5. The house is of such a size as to admit a large concourse of visitors. 6. Why do you beseech me not to do my duty at such a crisis as this? 7. Do not prevent your brother from coming to see me at my house. 8. I feared that the man would be unjustly condemned to death. 9. Do you fear that he will not get the punishment he deserves in the opinion of all? 10. I hope that you will not be caught loitering there for the sake of gaining intelligence.

Ex. 63. (R. 94-95).

1. I fear lest it be an unendurable sorrow (*say* greater than can be borne). 2. All the world knows (*use* nemo *with* quin, R. 94 Obs. 2) that you have lost a large sum of money. 3. It is almost incredible how often I warned him of his danger. 4. Cicero was [a man] of such simplicity that he never hesitated to praise himself roundly. 5. Some said that the man was suitable to be

employed in such an emergency. 6. I am not the man to break a promise which I have often made. 7. Who is there would wish to live on the condition of being universally hated? 8. That man who broke his word cannot expect to be believed any more. 9. Although I intend to try my fortune yet I have very little hope of success. 10. Love is of such a quality as to desire to become like to the object beloved.

Ex. 64 (R. 94-96).

1. It was clear that he was unwilling to make any further sacrifice. 2. The man who loves his country would willingly die in her behalf. 3. I am so far from approving your scheme that I consider it almost suicidal. 4. Cicero was not the man to bear wrongs in dignified silence (*say* silent dignity). 5. Such a terror and panic had seized the soldiers that no one was willing to take up arms or endeavour to drive the enemy from the camp. 6. I never received a letter from you, without (App. iv. 17. iii.) writing one in return. 7. Is this not a great matter that the Romans were accustomed to spare the vanquished? 8. It is certainly a cause of good fortune to me that I did not return to Rome as soon as I had intended (R. 82). 9. The next point is for me to teach (*use explanatory clause*) that the whole world is regulated by the providence of the gods. 10. I know you will do everything to come as soon as possible, yet I should wish (*pres. subj.*) it on condition that you do not hurry.

Ex. 65 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Cæsar was not the man to delay when once his mind was made up. 2. I cannot but fear that you misunderstand me. 3. The poem is too long to be learnt so as to be remembered. 4. It was the custom among the Romans that the tribes followed the lead of the tribe voting first. 5. We have accepted the conditions of the general, but on the terms that he remove the garrisons from the positions which he has occupied (R. 91, Obs. 2. *The positions are definite*). 6. I omit that he ordered me (*use* quod. R. 96, Obs. 3.) to state how many letters I had written. 7. It happened by chance that he was the first to renounce what he had heard at Rome.

8. It often happens that those who ought do not bear their [share of the] public burdens. 9. I cannot help writing to you every day, in order that I may receive a letter from you in return. 10. They said they were afraid that it would be impossible to bring all the supplies at the appointed date.

Ex. 66. (R. 97, 98).

1. These things being so, I have no reason for advancing up the hill (§ xxviii. G & H). 2. My brother is angry with me for neglecting to inform him of my arrival. 3. I am thankful to you for having done me this service to the best of your power. 4. Although you wish to distinguish yourself, it is not necessary for you to ruin your health. 5. I congratulate you on completing the work so successfully. 6. And yet it is necessary since the gods exist, that they be animated. 7. Cicero, though he had the worst health, did not even leave himself the night-time for taking rest. 8. We all have need of taking rest (R. 96), in order to preserve ourselves from death (*say* preserve life). 9. This does not at all terrify me that I have to fight my worst enemy. 10. Men shrink from death, not that they are afraid of pain, but that nature tends to self-preservation.

Ex. 67. (R. 99-100).

1. Having done his duty, he was not the man to avoid an investigation. 2. At mid-day when Cæsar had sent three legions for the sake of foraging, suddenly the enemy made an attack on the foragers from all sides. 3. Now at length that (when) I understand the matter, I think that I acted foolishly. 4. I congratulate you on your unexpected recovery (R. 97, ii.). 5. Although he might have been heir to his father's whole estate, he preferred that his step-mother should get half. 6. When he had seen the roses, then he thought it was spring-time. 7. You have now been studying philosophy for ten years (*say*, It is now . . . that you are studying). 8. Not yet had ten days elapsed, when the other son, an infant, is also slaughtered. 9. As I am wearied with my journey I am determined to take a complete rest in order to be fit for travelling.

10. The camp had been carelessly pitched, when suddenly the legions of the Samnites appeared at the gates.

Ex. 68. (*Recapitulation*).

1. I cannot but congratulate you on having such influence with the Chief of the Senate. 2. At night, when all things were quiet, a loud wailing and lamentation were heard. 3. I am pleased at the first act, when meanwhile a rumour has reached us that a show of gladiators is to be given: the people flock together. 4. He refused to go to Rome, not that he liked country life, but because he did not wish to show himself in public. 5. It is now ten days that (cum) I have been waiting for an answer. 6. The time was agreed upon, and when the regular signal had roused the watch, the gate was opened. 7. Theramenes, seeing that his entreaties were in vain, ended his speech, and no sooner was he (qui) silent, than (when) soldiers with drawn swords were introduced into the hall. 8. Though you have promised not to desert me, I fear you are meditating evil. 9. I rejoice that the Senate have directed you to see that the Republic takes no harm. 10. At that supreme moment, when he was in danger of instant death, he was quite calm and cheerful.

Ex. 69. (R. 101).

1. If you are equal to them taken all together, you will certainly be able to conquer them separately. 2. He who does not make use of an opportunity [if it is] offered, does not deserve [to get] another. 3. Let this suffice, no one can tell more secrets than he knows. 4. There were some who did not consider it safe to leave the city after dark (§ xxviii. B). 5. And if I were to say no more than that he has acted prudently, I should praise him less than he deserves. 6. If you were to ask me what I think of the matter, I should find it very difficult to answer. 7. If I had been present at the [meeting of the] Senate, I should have opposed the motion of Cato. 8. Who will deny that Cæsar was a great general and legislator? 9. We can have no friendship with you, if you continue to act deceitfully. 10. I fear that nobody will be permitted to leave Rome this month.

Ex. 70 (R. 101-102).

1. I was doubtful whether the enemy intended to fight or not.
2. Whether the enemy are bent on fighting or fleeing our men must hold themselves ready for work.
3. Although he promised solemnly never to desert my cause, he has already been convicted of making overtures to my enemies.
4. Although you might think me changed, I am really as firm in my determination as ever.
5. If he attempts to disturb the meeting, he will be arrested immediately.
6. Whether they are ten or twenty is of no consequence to us.
7. The man, however cowardly is not without his admirers!
8. If the criminal is pardoned (R. 55.) it will be a gross miscarriage of justice.
9. Although I cannot deny that you speak reasonably, yet I cannot bring myself to take your advice.
10. Whether you live or die, remember that you are a citizen of Rome.

Ex. 71 (R. 101-103).

1. Even though you had written to me, yet it would have been my duty to remain where I was.
2. If you pardon me (R. 55) I will return, but if not (R. 101, Obs. 4.) I can never do so.
3. If you find the troops disaffected, you must at once punish the ring-leaders.
4. We were captured and destroyed (R. 103, Obs. 2.) unless the Latins had of their own accord taken up arms in our arms in our behalf.
5. He spoke slowly and calmly as though he did not observe (R. 103, Obs. 3.) that his life was threatened.
6. I hope to be in time, but if not, I will do the best I can (R. 55).
7. The Carthaginians, although a warlike people, were no match for the power of Rome.
8. Whether the number of the stars is even or not cannot be determined by the astronomers (*say* do not agree).
9. If you were present and saw me with your own eyes (*ipse*) you would be more inclined to cry than to laugh.
10. Although your promises are very great, yet I do not expect you to do much for me.

Ex. 72 (R. 102-104).

1. I should like you to know that my malady is by no means cured, though I will not say it is incurable.
2. Who could say that he is certain of life even for the briefest space of time?
3. He was on the point of being killed, had not his brother come suddenly to

the rescue. 4. If you know that his life was in danger you should have given him a warning. 5. I am accustomed to praise the speeches of Thucydides: I could not imitate them if I wished, and perhaps even if I could, I would not. 6. You could not believe that the man would be such a fool. 7. Now I had rather you feared Cerberus than that you said these things. 8. Either the war should not have been undertaken, or it should have been waged in a manner worthy of the Roman people. 9. I could desire to see your countenance when you were reading this. 10. If I had known your need, I should be already at your side to help.

Ex. 73 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Though this course is a dangerous one for us to follow, yet we must not hesitate to enter upon it. 2. This is allowable if necessary, otherwise you must think it unjust. 3. Although it were to your interest to do this, yet you could not do it without injustice. 4. I had perished, unless you had come to my assistance. 5. Whether you blame or approve, I cannot but carry out my intention. 6. I would not have you think that I am quite indifferent whether you approve or not. 7. If I were only to ask your opinion, you would be willing to undertake the whole responsibility. 8. If man is mortal, it yet behoves him to seek a higher life. 9. Who would think that a new man would become Consul through his power of speech? 10. If we had known the condition of the country, it would have been preferable to lead the soldiers into winter quarters.

Ex. 74 (*Appendix ii. A*).

1. My brother, though but a bad correspondent, wrote to me twice a week regularly. 2. We have no reason to think unkindly of Cicero. 3. There are not wanting persons who deny that death is the end of all things. 4. Who is there who does not understand how long and how fiercely the war will be waged? 5. The poem is of such a sort that its meaning is not understood at once. 6. The benefits which you have conferred on me are greater than I can repay (R. 41, Obs. 2). 7. We must take care to use such haste as

may be useful without bringing the army into danger 8. And who was Pompey that men should be almost afraid to utter his name? 9. I hope you are not so simple as to think that all men admire you. 10. He is worthy of being beloved by all.

Ex. 75 (*Appendix ii. B*)

1. He is not the man I take him to be. 2. The more you hasten over (R. 55) your work, the more difficult you will find it 3. Rome had scarcely known such a reverse as she suffered at Cannæ. 4. Wherever you go, you will find persons who are desirous of a revolution. 5. Where are you going? I am not going the same way as you are. 6. The more there were at Veii the greater was the slaughter (*verb*) there. 7. I never had a slave so faithful in guarding my property as he was. 8. Do not say, 'he was not so faithful as fortunate': I would prefer you to say, 'He was fortunate rather than faithful.' 9. As he hoped to sell the horse at a higher price than he gave for it, he was not dissatisfied with the bargain. 10. He was anxious to know which of the two soldiers had first threatened the other with death.

Ex. 76 (*Recapitulation*).

1. I am in doubt whether the burden is too great to be carried. 2. If you believe that Socrates is worthy of imitation (*use a verb*), why do you shrink from saying so? 3. Whomsoever he met, he used to question as to the knowledge he seemed to possess. 4. The further you proceed up the mountain the more you will enjoy the landscape spread beneath. 5. I never met any one more addicted to gambling than the infamous Catiline. 6. Do you know whether he sold his house for the price he valued it at? 7. Surely he is not so infatuated as to break all his solemn pledges (*say solemnly given*)! 8. How few are there who understand (§ xxviii. F) how to conquer a stubborn child! 9. What is man that he should presume to equal himself to the gods? 10. Which of the two shall I take? You may take whichever you please with great delight to me (§ xxviii. H).

Ex. 77. (*Appendix iii.*)

* * * *To every subjunctive a number should be added referring to the subdivisions (second column of Append. iii.)*

1. The speech was a good deal too long, so that the audience were wearing out before the end. 2. This is true wisdom, to respect ourselves as well as our fellows. 3. May it be my lot to repay in some degree the favour you have conferred on me. 4. I was in great doubt whom I should ask for aid in my difficulty. 5. I should like to see Corinth before I die. 6. When I was in my father's house, I learnt much about the habits of household slaves. 7. Who would have thought that the prisoner would have been purposely allowed to escape? 8. He kept loitering in the streets until he discovered the disposition of the mob. 9. Some believe that the gods do not exist, or, if they exist, that they do not attend to human affairs. 10. The master praised the boy for acting virtuously in difficult circumstances.

Ex. 78 (*Recapitulation*).

1. I cannot but think he is a man to engage in a desperate enterprise. 2. It is certain that many philosophers are not men worthy of our honour (*use verb*). 3. If you go to Carthage, be sure to examine carefully the city and the whole locality. 4. If he had been a friend of mine I should certainly have given him very plain advice. 5. The more you try to do your duty, the more you will be in danger of making enemies. 6. These things being so, it is necessary for the Consuls to provide that the State suffers no harm. 7. Did you really think that he could be persuaded to sacrifice himself? [No.] 8. I am persuaded that the city will be taken in spite of all that we can do (§ xxviii. H). 9. I had certainly perished, unless you had been present in the nick of time. 10. I was just on the point of perishing, when lo! I found a friend ready to help.

Ex. 79 (*Recapitulation*).

1. What could I do? if I were to speak I might betray myself, but if I remained silent, there was as much danger. 2. I would not have you think that I am ignorant as to the extent of the

danger (*say* how great is). 3. If the case seems desperate, yet we must remember while there is life there is hope. 4. Even though I knew the name of the man who injured me, I would not reveal it to you. 5. The Athenians, though a powerful people, tried to do more than they could possibly effect. 6. He could not be persuaded that honesty is the best policy. 7. The longer you are (*say* one is) away from home, the more ardently you desire to return there. 8. Whether we succeed or fail, we shall always have the glory of attempting a dangerous enterprise. 9. This plan tends to the destruction of the State, if it does not actually destroy it. 10. When he had seen the preparations which had been made, he was convinced that there was no longer any reason for delaying (§ xxviii. G.).

Ex. 80 (105, 106).

1. Cæsar said that he would lead his army across the river as quickly as possible. 2. Who can deny that men often despise what they possess, and long for what they cannot get? 3. Themistocles sent him word that the bridge, which he had made over the Hellespont (R. 106, Obs. 1), was being broken down. 4. They warn the citizens that all who are found (R. 55) with arms on their persons (*use partic.*) will be dealt with as traitors. 5. I thought that you, such is your benevolence (§ xxviii. F.) would forgive me my inadvertence. 6. They say that the prisoner has been condemned to death—a thing which I shall not easily believe. 7. He ordered them to make immediate preparations for battle by taking their breakfast and anointing their bodies with oil. 8. They answered that the slave in question (§ xxviii. K) had been seen with a hunting knife. 9. Sulla ordered all the richest men in Rome (§ xxviii. D) to be proscribed on the ground that they were enemies of the State. 10. Who could have expected that Cæsar would realize all his wishes, and then die a shocking death?

Ex. 81 (R. 107, 108).

1. They cried out (O.O.), Could any one bear such infamous conduct? Let him be hurled from the Tarpeian Rock! 2. 'What is this' (O.O.), said he, 'O Tribunes? are you going to overthrow

the State under the guidance of Appius Herdonius?' 3. He asked (O. O.), 'How many of you are willing to risk everything with me?' 4. The military tribune thought that nothing should be undertaken rashly. What could be more foolish or base than to take measures about their highest interests at the instigation of the foe? 5. He asked the many bystanders whether those who wished well to their country were ready to follow him. 6. He asked whether any one could be so foolish as to neglect to pray to the gods in such an emergency. 7. He said that all who had acted so basely should be punished without fail. 8. He asked them if they thought that such a man as he could be restrained from using violence. 9. He asked them not to dread death which is a mark of the coward. 10. Whether you intend to slay me or not, I neither know nor care.

Ex. 82 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Theophrastus is said when dying to have accused nature for giving a long life to crows and ravens to whom it mattered not, and a short life to men to whom it mattered immensely. 2. They said they had seen a man approaching, who accosted them in a foreign tongue (R. 106, Obs. 3). 3. He said that he would take care of the boy who was entrusted to him. 4. Did you ask if I had any knowledge of what happened ten years ago? 5. He asked (O.O), Who is so base as to desert his king? 6. He asked (O O.), Would any one wish to take from the allies that which they had contributed to the strength (*use gerundial of* to strengthen) of the Republic? 7. It seemed an indignity that he should be accused by that very slave whom he had liberated. 8. He intended to make an attack by night on the camp which was pitched near the river (R. 106, Obs. 1). 9. He declared that he would never forget his promise (R. 106, Obs. 2). 10. He orders them to advance against the enemy, while he remains to guard the rear.

Ex 83 (109-111).

1. He says that if they do (R. 55) this, he can have no friendship for them. 2. He said that if they did (should do) this, he could have no friendship for them. 3. It is certain that if you

had been in the circus you could have seen Catiline among the spectators. 4. He answered to their questions (R. 66), that if he had promised anything he would certainly perform it. 5. Cæsar replied that if they would send hostages, he would grant a truce. 6. Did you know that if it thunders, all men here consider it a sign from heaven? 7. He thought that all was lost if the soldiers wavered for an instant. 8. He expected to have conquered Rome if Hasbrubal had not been met on his arrival in Italy. 9. He said that if he had received a letter from his friend he would be reading it on that occasion. 10. It is certain that if we pray to the gods, they are not unable to grant our prayer.

Ex. 84 (*Recapitulation*).

1. I think I have sufficiently proved how much the life of philosophy surpasses all other modes of existence. 2. He asked (O.O.) what then remains if we have neither dismounted the cavalry of the enemy, nor as infantry are doing anything worthy of mention? What third form of battle are we waiting for? 3. He said (O.O.) may I die unless I am delighted that you are well! 4. He told them to enjoy life while they could. 5. He was certain that if I had come up in time he would have saved the life of his friend. 6. He told his soldiers that if they disobeyed the least of his orders, he would have no hesitation in inflicting summary punishment on them. 7. He was incensed against the enemy for murdering his hostages. 8. He said that while he was writing he heard them speaking treason together. 9. He said (O.O.) It is to your advantage that I return to the city as soon as possible. 10. He said (O.O.) If you want anything, Cæsar, of me do you come to me; for I. if I had wanted anything of you I should have gone to you. (R. 108).

Ex. 85 (R. 112, 113).

1. The general feared that he would be basely murdered by some of his own soldiers, whom he had punished. 2. The father asked the judges to consider that he could not but defend his own son (§ xxviii. G). 3. Cæsar exhorts the Nervii not to lose an

opportunity of freeing themselves (R. 70, Obs. 2). 4. Then the king sends word to him, that if it seems good to himself, he may return home with his legion. 5. Marcus thanked me for sparing him. 6. Marcus returned safe because I spared him. 7. He feared lest himself and his children might run the risk of their life. 8. He threatened the slave that if he found him again absent from his duty, he would have him scourged. 9. Cæsar replied to Ariovistus that it was by his own liberality and that of the Senate that he had been regarded as a friend of Rome. 10. Nature prompts a child to love itself. (*Translate so as to exclude ambiguity*). (R. 112, Obs.)

Ex. 86 (*Recapitulation*).

1. He said that he would lead his troops against them, if they hesitated to accept the terms of peace. 2. He recommended them to enjoy their good fortune while it still remained. 3. He asked (O.O.) Is there anyone so foolish as to think that he can conquer Fortune? 4. What could I do? I could only recommend each one to provide for himself (R. 48, Obs. 3). 5. The Arvenians beseech Vercingetorix to consult for their interests, and not to allow them to be plundered by the enemy, especially as he sees that the whole war is being transferred to their territory. 6. News was brought to me from Varro that he was coming to my house the following day. (*What is the logical subject of first clause?* Introd., Obs. before R. 112, ii.). 7. The Senate sent word to Cæsar that they desired him to take such measures as might seem good to him (R. 112, Obs.) 8. Horace congratulated his friend on his recovery (*use verb*). 9. News was brought to Quintius Cincinnatus when ploughing in the field that he was made dictator. 10. From the very beginning a hope had been in [the mind of] Faustulus that a royal progeny was been reared in his house.

Ex. 87 (§ xxviii. B).

1. He promised his friend to write to him at Athens every 5th month. 2. Eight years after the death (*verb*) of Sulla, his laws were in great measure repealed. 3. This happened in the year 70, B.C., before Pompey retired from public life. 4. There

is no doubt that the revolution was due to the coalition of Pompey with Crassus, and the presence (*verb*) of their troops in the city. 5. A supplication was proclaimed to last from the 28th of June till the 1st of July in the year 121, B.C. 6. It is a long time since he has been suffering from an incurable disease. 7. He was about 18 years of age, when he first undertook [to wage] war against the enemies of his country. 8. If he was not more than 7 years old, at least he had been with the army for more than two years. 9. He asked me whether I had been studying philosophy for three months. 10. There is no doubt that before the dictatorship of Fabius the Roman power was on the point of being destroyed

Ex. 88 (§ xxviiii, B, C, D)

1. He was in the habit of saying that Cæsar's wife ought to be above suspicion. 2. If you make the attempt you will find that it is difficult to please everybody. 3. Day after day I had been expecting a man who had been many years in my debt. 4. He considers himself the wisest man in the world, and doubts whether any wiser man has lived within the memory of man. 5. On the 12th April, B.C. 58, Cicero had been a whole year in exile. 6. He was not too proud to spend the time in writing letters filled with unmanly wailings. 7. It is evident that he would have then committed suicide had he only possessed courage to do so. 8. The excellent Atticus was a great solace (R. 9) and sent him the kindest letters he could. 9. Some one might say who would pity a man like Cicero? I must admit he acted with some precipitation, but all the best men are liable to make mistakes. 10. Before the consulship of Cicero his daughter was more than 16 years old; she was born on the 5th August, B.C. 79.

Ex. 89 (§ xxviii., F, G).

1. He told the latest news he had heard but hardly anyone believed him. 2. Fabius, a good general it is true, but more cautious than energetic, was in great danger of being dismissed from office. 3. Some thought in one way and others in another of his policy, but how few there were who thought he would save Rome. 4. It was not in the power of every general to do nothing but wait

until Hannibal had either spent his power or lost his patience.

5. The great Cunctator was so far from attacking his enemy that he would not even meet him in the field. 6. Hannibal's tactics, and those too of no ordinary kind, almost forced Fabius to fight.

7. He made it his object to show that he despised a policy of defence. 8. The Romans had no reason for believing that that policy was the best. 9. I rather think Hannibal could not but feel disappointed when he was unable to force a battle. 10. It is universally admitted that he was the greatest general the world had ever seen.

Ex. 90 (§ xxviii. H, K).

1. According to philosophers many pass their life without enjoying its highest pleasure. 2. I never thought of you but I wished I had treated you more considerately. 3. If we had a certainty of a long life, is it certain we should know what to do with it. 4. When you are able to pay I shall expect you to send me £300. 5. He threatened the slave with death if he should stir a hair's breadth from his post. 6. Whenever I begin to think of Plato I cannot but wonder at the beauty of his mind. 7. He said that he was different from what he once was ; if it were not so, he would not be insulted with impunity. 8. Nothing ought to prevent us from preferring death to dishonour. 9. What is that to you? At least you have the knowledge of having performed your duty, and I do not fear that you will be condemned without a hearing. 10. In case of his death I hope to be heir to his whole estate, and counting the possessions I have now I shall not have to grieve on account of poverty.

Ex. 91 (Appendix iv, 1-12).

1. As long as you delay to expose the matter to the Senate, you will be in danger of incurring a charge of treachery. 2. He was not the first to do it, perhaps you meant to say he did it first. 3. The grapes, being clothed with leaves, are not without some moderate warmth, and yet resist the excessive heat of the sun. 4. While the Roman citizen practises regularly in the Campus he is more secure against infection. 5. Scipio was unwilling to leave the

city until his wound was cured. 6. Hanno obtained a troop of horse which was insufficient, not merely for attacking the enemy, but even for defending his camp. 7. He used to state things which we knew not only had not happened but could not even possibly happen. 8. I could not leave Rome before the sun got oppressive. 9. Before the Ides of June it is hardly necessary to seek the country. 10. What he told me before I could not remember after so many years' [interval].

Ex. 92 (*Appendix* iv.—13-19).

1. If you really do not think this, I do not see any reason for your saying it. 2. He rarely comes back to his house without finding some trouble awaiting him there. 3. You ought not to prevent that friend of yours from trying to help you. 4. According to Crassus, there is no doubt that corn will be dear at Rome this winter. 5. Sometimes you make mistakes, but you never own to it. 6. As soon as the signal for retreat was sounded, the rearguard fell into confusion and impeded the movements of those in front. 7. On the 29th of June, when I was expecting a message from my brother, news came of his sudden death. 8. Eight years after his departure his friends determined to make it their object to get him recalled. 9. After eight years he was not so anxious to return as he was at first. 10. Since you take this view, I cannot but tell you that you are sadly in error.

Ex. 93 (*Recapitulation*).

1. When I was in the country, I used to get frequent letters from my friends in Rome. 2. I know not whether I am likely to deter you from wasting your time over trifles. 3. I have said all this with the intention of persuading you to act differently whether you will do so or not is uncertain. 4. I cannot help suspecting that you are not only not a friend of liberty, but one of her deadliest enemies. 5. You refused to do what was for your own as well as for my interest: would you had decided differently! 6. Three days ago I met him in the forum: I little knew that before such a short time should elapse, he would be no more (*say* dead). 7. So earnestly did the child plead for his father, that the

judges could no longer withstand his entreaties (R. 63). 8. He declared that he had been informed by his scouts that the enemy was advancing, and that they would certainly be attacked on the morrow 9. To-morrow we can fight, said he; to-day we shall prepare for the battle in spite of all they can do to prevent it. 10. He was so stupid as to think that the earth must be many times larger than the sun.

Ex. 94 (*Recapitulation*).

1. Perceiving that he knew something about the subject, I proceeded to question him for a whole hour. 2. On the 20th of September, B.C. 480, it was believed that two great battles were fought, at Salamis and at Himera. 3. He promised to sell me the largest house he had at a lower price than its real value. 4. It is not a mark of a good general to be obliged to fight with an inferior force. 5. I always thought he was a low man and beneath contempt. 6. I heard that you were wondering whether I intended to return home or not. 7. So graciously did he ask the people to pardon him that they were on the point of doing so. 8. Let us no longer delay to send the expedition: it were disgraceful for our allies to be destroyed owing to our negligence. 9. I fear that in my old age I shall no longer have as many friends as I have in my youth. 10. I am not afraid that you will be condemned without a hearing: what I fear is (R. 46, Obs. 1. iii.) that you will make a poor defence and cause them to condemn you.

Exercises.

PART THE THIRD.—CONNECTED PROSE.

Ex. 95 (*Appendix v.*)

Crassus¹ himself, overwhelmed with grief and mortification, if not with fear, was incapable of suggesting any counsel or adopting any resolution. Cassius and the other officers promptly set him aside, and took upon themselves to give the necessary orders. They² determined to retreat without a moment's delay. Compelled³ to leave behind them the wounded, these unfortunate victims, hopeless of receiving quarter, uttered such piercing shrieks as reached the ears of the Parthian spies, who guessed the cause and⁴ reported it. Immediately⁵ the horsemen sprang to their saddles, and⁴ speedily overtook the retiring legions.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hints 7, ii., and 9, i.—Make 'Crassus' the object of principal verb 'set aside,' and turn 'overwhelmed' by a *quum* clause.

² Hint 7, i.

³ Hint 6, i., and 9, i.—What is the principal subject here?

⁴ Hint 7, i.

⁵ Hint 6, i.

Ex. 96 (*Appendix v.*)

While awaiting the arrival of the dictator, Brutus and Cassius employed themselves, as *prætors*, with listening to casual applications¹; and the freedom² with which the former expressed himself, rebuking those who boasted that Cæsar would reverse³ his decisions, was especially remarked. But as the morning wore on, the conspirators were exposed to redoubled risks. A senator, addressing Casca with a significant smile, said, "You have concealed your secret from me, but Brutus has revealed it." In⁴ another moment, Casca would have pressed his hand and⁵ communicated the dark design, but⁶ the other went on to allude to his meditated competition for the *ædileship*, and⁶ the conspirator saw that he was undiscovered.

¹ Hint 4, ii., and R. 63.

² § xxviii., f.

³ R. 62, Obs. 2.

⁴ Hint 6, ii.

⁵ Hint 7, i.

⁶ Hint 7, ii.

Ex. 97 (*Appendix v.*)

CURIOLANUS.

After this there was¹ a war between the Romans and the Volscians: and the Romans attacked the city of Corioli. The citizens² of Corioli opened their gates, and made a sally, and drove the Romans² back to their camp. Then Caius ran forwards with a few men, and called back³ the runaways, and he stayed the enemy, and⁴ turned the tide of the battle, so that the Volscians fled back into the city. But⁵ Caius followed them, and when he saw the gates still open, for the Volscians were flying into the city, then he called to the Romans and said, “For us⁶ are yon gates set aside rather than for the Volscians: why are we afraid to rush in?”—ARNOLD.

¹ Hint 9, i.⁴ Hint 6, i.—Say ‘not only . . . but also.’² Hint 7, iii.—Which word will go best with a Relative?⁵ Hint 6, ii.³ Hint 7, i.⁶ Use O.R.Ex. 98 (*Appendix v.*)

The struggle¹ of the Numantians, a little people, not² numbering more than 8,000 fighting men, against the whole power of Rome, which was now combined against them, is one of the most gallant and obstinate on record. Scipio, the² conqueror of Carthage, was³ named consul in 134 for the special purpose of bringing² it to a successful issue, after it⁴ had continued with much loss and disgrace to the Romans for nine years. With a force of 60,000 men he⁵ blockaded Numantia, and at last reduced it by famine, after⁶ most of its citizens had fallen by his sword or their own.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hint 9, ii.—Say ‘It has scarcely been recorded that a more gallant struggle.’⁴ Hint 6, ii.² Hints 6, ii., and 9, iii.⁵ Hint 7, ii.³ Hint 7, i.—For date see § xxviii. B.⁶ Hint 7, i.Ex. 99 (*Appendix v.*)

The Roman army proceeded from Epirus to Thessaly; but being too¹ weak it could not attack Perseus, nor² could it place full

¹ Say ‘too weak to attack’ (§ xxviii. c).² Hint 7, i.

confidence in the Greeks in its rear³. Its commander, the consul Marcus Philippus, therefore induced Perseus to⁴ conclude an armistice, in order to carry on negotiations of peace; and⁵ Perseus though he had been successful in the first engagement, allowed himself to be duped instead of⁶ following up his advantages. The Romans, on the other hand, employed⁷ their time in stirring up the Greeks and strengthening themselves.

³ R. 66, Obs. 4.

⁴ Hint 7, i.

⁵ Hint 6, i.

⁶ § xxviii. ii.

⁷ Say 'made it their object' (§ xxviii. 9).

Ex 100 (*Appendix v.*)

The accusation¹ was then directed against the other generals. Two of them made their escape;² Theramenes and Thrasybulus were acquitted; and the remainder were brought to trial and³ condemned. On that occasion Socrates, who was then a member of the council, was bold enough to speak against so severe a judgment, and exerted⁴ himself to save the unfortunate men, but in vain. In order⁵ to obtain their acquittal,⁶ it was proposed to judge them one by one; but the votes were⁷ taken upon them in a body, and all were sentenced at once to drink the hemlock.

¹ Hints 4, ii., and 7, i.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Hint 7, i.

⁴ Say 'nor did he omit anything.'

⁵ Hint 6, i.

⁶ Hint 4, ii.

⁷ Hint 7, ii.

⁸ Hint 7, i., and R. 56.

Ex. 101 (*Appendix v.*)

Pyrrhus took the enemy's camp without resistance: he¹ had indeed gained a complete victory. On² the following day he visited the field of battle, and³ seeing the bodies of the Romans, all of whom had fallen with their faces towards the enemy, he exclaimed, "With such soldiers the world were⁴ mine; and it would belong to the Romans if I were their commander." But the best part of his own men were fallen; and to those who congratulated him on victory, he replied, "One more such victory and I⁵ shall be obliged to return to Epirus without a single soldier."

¹ Hint 7, i.

² Hint 6, i.

³ Hint 7, i.

⁴ R. 111, i.

⁵ R. 108.

Ex. 102 (*Appendix v.*)

Pompey applied himself immediately to calm the public disorders, and¹ published several new laws prepared by him for that purpose one of them² was to appoint a special commission to enquire into the death of Clodius, the burning of the Senate House, and the attack on³ M. Lepidus, and to appoint an extraordinary⁴ judge of consular rank to preside in it. A second was against² bribery and corruption in elections, with the infliction of new and severe penalties. Cælius⁵ opposed his negative to these laws, as being rather privileges than laws, and provided particularly against Milo.—MIDDLETON.

¹ Hint 7, ii.

² Hint 6, ii.

³ R. 66, Obs. 4.

⁴ Hint 5, ii.

⁵ Hint 6, i.

Ex. 103 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

It is also related¹ that when² Hamilcar was besieging Syracuse, a vision appeared to him of a divine figure, who told him that on the next day he would dine in Syracuse. His hopes were much raised by this³ announcement. But next day there arose such a disturbance⁴ in the camp that the soldiers took to fighting with each other, and accordingly the Syracusans, perceiving⁵ the occurrence, came unobserved into the camp, and⁶ carried off the general prisoner to the town. In this way the prophecy was fulfilled.

¹ R. 56.

² R. 63.

³ Hint 6, ii.

⁴ Hint 4, ii.

⁵ Hint 7, i.

⁶ Hint 7, i.

Ex. 104 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

“What,” they exclaimed, “were they to be dragged to that obscure spot to die by hunger? The whole expedition had been a cheat¹ and a failure¹ from beginning to end. The golden² countries

¹ Hint 4, i.

² Say ‘gold-bearing.’

so much vaunted, had seemed to fly³ from them as they advanced; and the little gold they had been fortunate⁴ enough to glean had all been sent back to Panama to entice⁵ other fools to follow their example. What had they got in return for all their sufferings? The only treasures they could boast were their bows and arrows, and they were⁶ now to be left to die on this dreary island, without so much as a rood of consecrated ground to lay their bones in.”—PRESCOTT.

³ Say ‘to mock them like phantoms.’

⁴ Say ‘which it had fallen to their lot to glean.’

⁵ Hint 7, ii.—Change the subject, making it personal.

⁶ Say ‘they were being thrown out.’

Ex. 105 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

In this plight,¹ therefore, he went home, and² restrained himself as long as he could, that his wife and children should not perceive his distress; but he could not be silent long, because that his trouble increased: wherefore at length he broke³ his mind to his wife and children, and thus he began to talk to them: “Oh! my dear wife,” said he, “and you the children of my bowels,⁴ I, your dear friend, am in myself undone, by reason of a burden that lyeth hard on me; moreover, I am certainly informed that this our city will be burned by fire from heaven.”—BUNYAN.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² Hint 7, i.

³ Say ‘opened.’

⁴ Say ‘whom I myself begat.’

Ex. 106 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

In order to give a sanction to his new measures, the king invited¹ Temple from his retreat and appointed him ambassador to Holland. That wise² minister reflecting on the unhappy issue of

¹ Hint 7, i.

² Say ‘such was his wisdom.’—§ xxviii. f.

his former undertakings, resolved before he embarked³ anew to acquaint himself as far as possible with the intention of the king in those measures which he seemed again to have adopted. After⁴ blaming the dangerous schemes before described, which Charles was desirous to excuse, he told his Majesty very plainly that he would find it extremely difficult if not absolutely impossible⁵ to introduce into England the same system of government and religion which was established in France.—HUME.

³ Say 'not to embark . . . before.'

⁴ Hint 7, i.

⁵ Say 'to be despaired of.'

Ex. 107 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

Their minds were undecided whether to praise or to condemn the audacity¹ of the Consul's enterprise. It was evident it would be judged by the event, that² most unfair criterion.¹ They complained³ that the camp was left without a general in the vicinity of the⁴ dreadful Hannibal, and containing an army from which all the strength and all the flower of the soldiery had been withdrawn; that the Consul had given indications⁵ of a march into Lucania, when he was making for Picenza and Gallia, and had left the camp no better security¹ than the mistake of the enemy, who were unaware that the general with some of the troops were at a distance. What would happen if they should know what was taking place ?

¹ Hint 4, i.

² Hint 6, ii.

³ R. 106, Obs. 5.

⁴ § xxviii. F.

⁵ Hint 4, ii.

Ex. 108 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

He perceived that the spirit of disaffection still lurked among his troops; that though hitherto checked by the uniform success¹ of his schemes, or suppressed by the hand of authority, various

¹ Say 'the continued tenor.'

events might occur² which would encourage it and call it forth. He observed that many of his men, weary of the fatigue of service, longed to revisit their settlements in Cuba; and that upon any appearance³ of extraordinary danger or any reverse of fortune, it would be impossible to restrain them from returning thither. He was sensible that his forces, already too feeble, could bear no diminution, and that a very small defection of his followers would oblige⁴ him to abandon the enterprise.

² Simplify, by omitting the phrase, |
might occur.'

³ Hint 7, i. (abl. abs.)

⁴ Simplify, by omitting 'would oblige.'

Ex. 109 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

We are told that in the sack¹ of Athens the Goths had collected all the libraries, and² were on the point of setting fire to this funeral³ pile of Grecian learning, had not one of their chiefs, of more refined policy than his brethren, dissuaded them from the design; by the profound⁴ observation, that as long as the Greeks were addicted to the study⁵ of books, they would never apply themselves to the exercise¹ of arms. The⁶ sagacious counsellor (should the truth of the fact be admitted) reasoned like an ignorant barbarian. In⁶ the most polite and powerful nations, genius⁷ of every kind has displayed itself about the same period; and the age of science has generally been the age of military virtue and success.—GIBBON.

¹ Hint 4, iii.

² Hint 7, ii.

³ Put this expression with 'collected.'

⁴ Omit 'profound.'

⁵ Hint 4, ii.

⁶ Hint 6, i.

⁷ Hint 4, i.

Ex. 110 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

THE ROMAN MATRONS.

She then addressed Volumnia and Vergilia, and¹ said: "Our coming here² to you is our own doing; neither the Senate nor any

¹ Hint 7, i.

² Hint 4, ii.

other mortal man have sent³ us; but the god in whose temple we were sitting as suppliants put it into our hearts, that we should come and⁴ ask you to join with us, women with women, without any aid of men, to win for our country a great deliverance, and for ourselves a name glorious above all women, even above those⁵ Sabine wives in the old time, who stopped the battle between their husbands and their fathers. Come then with us to the camp of Caius, and let us pray to him to show us mercy.” Volumnia said, “We will go with you;” and⁶ they all went to the camp of the enemy.—ARNOLD.

³ Hint 9, i.

⁴ Hint 7, i.

⁵ Hint 28, f.

⁶ Hint 7, ii.

Ex. 111 (§ xxv.-xxvii.—*On the use of O.O.*)

His first opinion was, that the savages in the boat¹ never could² live out the storm which blew³ that night they went off, but must, of necessity, be drowned, or driven south to those other shores where they were as sure to be devoured; but as to what they would⁴ do if they came safe on shore, he said he knew not; but it was his opinion, that they were so dreadfully frightened with the manner of their being attacked, the noise, and the fire, that he believed they would² tell the people the others were all killed by thunder and lightning, not by the hand of man; and that the two which appeared were two heavenly spirits,⁵ or furies, come down to destroy them, and not men with weapons.—DEFOE.

¹ R. 66, Obs. 4.

² R. 105.

³ Use partic.

⁴ R. 105, and R. 109.

⁵ Say ‘gods.’

Ex. 112.

The Romans had a fleet furnished by their allies, while the Greeks had no ships, and¹ the Roman fleet cruised along the coast of Peloponnesus, landing everywhere and ravaging the

¹ Say ‘whence it happened that.’

country with the most terrible cruelty. What Themistocles had said to the Peloponnesians, when they wanted to fortify themselves on the Isthmus, now came to pass; the contingents² dispersed in all directions, in order to protect their own towns, without being³ able to do so. A somewhat favourable engagement,⁴ in which they defeated a detachment of the Romans, which had ventured too far and was not duly supported, made⁵ the Achæans completely mad; and being thus encouraged they thoughtlessly attacked the Roman army.

² Say 'the allies.'

³ § xxviii. H.

⁴ Hint 7, i.

⁵ Hint 9, i.

Ex. 113.

So I saw in my dream that they went on together till they came in sight¹ of the gate. Now, I saw further that betwixt them and the gate was a river, but² there was no bridge to go over, and² the river was very deep. At the sight³ therefore of this⁴ river, the pilgrims were much stunned; but⁵ the men that went with them said, you must go through or you cannot go to the gate. The pilgrims then, especially Christian, began to despond in their minds, and⁶ looked this way and that: but no way could be found⁷ by them by which they might escape the river. Then they asked the men if the waters were all of a depth? They said No, but you shall find it deeper or shallower, as you believe in the king of the place.—BUNYAN.

¹ Say 'they saw.'

² Hint 7, iii.

³ Hint 4, ii.

⁴ Hint 6, ii.

⁵ Hint 7, ii.

⁶ Hint 7, i.

⁷ R. 56.

Ex. 114.

Perseus gave¹ himself up to the Romans, in² the vain hope, perhaps, of generous forbearance.³ He was⁴ required, in the first place, to follow the triumph of his conqueror, and⁴ was then placed in confinement, where he died a few years later, not without grave suspicion³ of base and cruel ill-treatment.³ The famous title of

¹ Hint 7, ii.

² Use partic.

³ Hint 4, ii.

⁴ Hint 7, i.

‘King of Macedon’ disappears henceforth from the page of history; but the country was not definitely reduced to the form of a Roman province till some years later, when⁵ a man named Andriscus, pretending⁶ to be a son of Perseus, roused it to revolt, but⁷ was easily put down, and⁸ its independence was finally extinguished.—MERIVALE.

⁵ Say ‘after some years.’

⁶ Hint 7, i.

⁷ Hint 7, ii.

⁸ Say ‘from which it happened that.’

Ex. 115.

Camillus accepted the call¹ of his countrymen, unworthy as he might deem them. He² collected an army from the remnant of the legions of the Allia and the fugitives from the city, and advanced with all speed to their relief. Meanwhile, however, they had³ been reduced to the last extremity, and compelled to ask for terms of capitulation. The Gauls⁴ had consented to accept a sum of money and⁵ retire. They were engaged in weighing out the sum required, and Brennus, in his insolence, was casting his sword into the opposite scale, exclaiming, ‘Woe to the worsted,’ when⁶ Camillus suddenly appeared before them with his gallant warriors, and⁷ annulled the treaty which the people, he said,⁸ had no power to make without the consent of the dictator.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hint 4, ii., and R. 64.

² Hint 7, i.

³ Hint 7, ii.

⁴ Say ‘to the Gauls who had consented.’

⁵ Say ‘to retire.’

⁶ R. 100, Obs. 2.

⁷ Hint 7, i.

⁸ R. 90, Obs. 2.

Ex. 116.

After his departure¹ everything tended to the wildest anarchy. Faction and discontent had often risen so high among the old settlers that they could hardly be kept within bounds. The spirit of the new comers was too ungovernable to bear any restraint.² Several among them³ of better rank⁴ were such dissipated young

¹ Hint 7, ii.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Hint 6, ii.

⁴ Say ‘born in a higher position.’

men as their friends were glad to send out in quest of whatever fortune might betide them⁵ in a foreign land. Of the lower order many were so profligate and destitute that their country was happy⁶ to throw them out as nuisances⁷ to society. Such persons were little capable of the regular subordination, the strict economy, the persevering industry which their situation required.⁸ The Indians observing their misconduct and that every precaution was neglected harrassed them with continual hostilities.—ROBERTSON.

⁵ Say 'about to experience any fortune whatever.'

⁶ Use adverb.

⁷ Say 'pestilence.'

⁸ Say 'according to the necessity of the situation.'

Ex. 117.

Peter Alexovitz¹ of Russia, when he came to years of manhood,² though he found himself emperor of a vast and numerous people, master of an endless territory, absolute commander of the lives and fortunes of his subjects, in the midst of³ this unbounded power and greatness, turned his thoughts upon himself and his people with sorrow. Sordid ignorance and a brute manner of life this generous prince beheld and contemned from the light of⁴ his own genius. His judgment suggested this to him and his courage prompted him to amend it.

In order to do this he himself left his diadem⁵ to learn the true way to glory and honour, and to apply himself to useful arts wherein to employ the laborious, the simple, the honest part of his people.

¹ Say 'the son of Alexander.'

² Say 'to his own guardianship.'

³ Say 'so enjoyed his power . . . that he considered' (R. 95, Obs. i.)

⁴ Say 'was a singular man of enlightened mind—*vir singularis solles ingenio*.

⁵ Hint 5, i.

Ex. 118

Now at this time many of the laws of the good King Servius were restored, which Tarquinus the tyrant had overthrown. For

the commons again chose¹ their own judges, to try all causes between a² man and his neighbour; and they had again their meetings and their sacrifices in the city and in the country, every man in his own tribe and in his own district. And lest there should seem to be two kings instead of one, it was ordered that only one of the two should bear rule at one time, and that³ the lictors with their rods and axes should walk before him alone. And the two were to bear rule month by month.—ARNOLD.

¹Say 'it was allowed them to choose.' | ²Say 'between citizens.'
³Hint 7, iii.

Ex. 119.

THE DECEMVIRIS.

Another of the decemvirs, Spurius Oppius, underwent a similar fate.¹ He was particularly odious, because he had been left with Appius in the government of the city, while the other decemvirs were² abroad with the legions: and because he had been a faithful imitator³ of his colleague's tyranny.³ His most obnoxious crime was his having⁴ cruelly and wantonly scourged an old and distinguished soldier, for no offence, as it was said, whatsoever. Bail, therefore, was⁵ refused to him also; he was committed to prison, and there died before his trial came⁶ on, either by the hands of the executioner or his own.—ARNOLD.

¹Hint 4, ii.
²Say 'served.'
³Hint 4, ii.

⁴Hint 4, ii.
⁵Hint 7, ii.
⁶Say 'the day of trial.'

Ex. 120.

Temple arrived¹ at the Hague not charged with any public commission, but he² availed himself of this opportunity of introducing himself to De Witt. "My only business, sir," he said, "is to see the things which are most considerable in your country, and³ I should execute my design very imperfectly if I went away without⁴ seeing you." De Witt, who from report had formed a high opinion of Temple, was² pleased by the compliment, and replied with a frankness and cordiality which⁵ at once led to intimacy.—MACAULAY.

¹Hint 7, ii.
²Hint 7, i.
³Hint 6, ii.

xxviii. H.
⁵Say 'such that.'

Ex. 121.

C. FLAMINIUS.

His opposition¹ to the interest of the nobles was² evinced by the contempt³ with which he cast aside the⁴ trammels of augury. When the senate in their jealousy sent letters requiring him to refrain from an engagement on account of the omens which had⁵ been observed by their agents, he refused to read them until he had fought and⁶ won. This⁷ done, he ceremoniously opened the missives in the presence of his soldiers and⁸ declared that it was now too late to obey them. The senate, piqued at his insolence, refused to grant him a triumph, but the people interfered, with their tribunes at their head, and decreed him full honours by a vote of their assembly.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² R. §6.

³ Hint 4, ii.

⁴ R. 66, Obs. 4.

⁵ Hint 7, i.

⁶ Hint 7, i.

⁷ Hints 6, ii., and 7, i.

⁸ Hint 7, ii.

Ex. 122.

But after all it must needs be owned that Pompey had a very difficult part to act and¹ much less liberty of executing what he himself approved than in all other wars in which he had been engaged. In his wars against foreign enemies his power was absolute, and all his motions depended² on his own will, but in this besides several kings and princes of the east who attended him in person, he had with him in his camp almost all the chief magistrates and senators of Rome, men of equal dignity with himself, who had commanded armies and obtained triumphs, and expected a share³ in all his counsels, and that in their common danger no step should be taken but by their common advice.

¹ Hint 7, iii.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Hint 9, i., say 'carried on everything by his own will alone.'

Ex. 123.

I cannot express the confusion¹ I was in, though the joy² of seeing a ship, and one that I had reason to believe was manned by my own countrymen, and consequently friends, was such³ as I cannot describe; but yet I had⁴ some secret doubts, bidding me keep on my guard. It occurred to me to consider what business⁵ an English ship could have in that part of the world, and I knew there had⁶ been no storms to drive them there in distress;⁷ and that if they were really English, it was most probable that they were here upon no good design, and that I had better continue as I was than fall into the hands of thieves and madmen.—DEFOE.

¹ Hint 4, ii.—use indir. question.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Use a paraphrase, to avoid repetition.

⁴ Hint 7, i.

⁵ Hint 4, iii.

⁶ Hint 9, i.

⁷ Hint 7, i.

Ex. 124.

It was at the trying moment when¹ Carthage was constrained to yield to the threats² of Rome, that Hamilcar performed a solemn sacrifice for the success² of his premeditated³ enterprise. At the close⁴ of the ceremony he called his son, then aged 9 years, to his side, and⁴ asked if he would like to accompany him. Pleased with the ardour⁵ with which the child accepted the offer, he bade him devote himself once for all to the service of his country, and swear with his hand upon the altar, that he would never be⁶ the friend of the Romans. Thus solemnly dedicated to the patriotic work, Hannibal grew up under a keen sense⁵ of his obligation, and⁴ cherished the resolution to avenge some day upon Rome the shame and injuries of Carthage.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hint 7, iii

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Hints 4, ii., and 7, iii.

⁴ Hint 7, i.

⁵ Hint 4, i.

⁶ Say ‘use the friendship.’

Ex. 125.

But the punishment of Rabirius was not the thing aimed at, nor¹ was it worth while to disturb the peace of the city, for the life of an old man. They attacked the privilege of the senate by which they could at once arm the city on the breaking out of any sudden sedition, by requiring² the Consuls to take care that the State was subject to no loss. By which vote, everything done³ in consequence of it was thought to be sanctioned by it, so that several traitorous magistrates had been crushed without the formalities of a trial in the very act of⁴ raising a sedition. This privilege was always protested against by the Tribunes, as violating the constitution by putting⁵ the lives of the citizens in the power of the senate.

¹ Say 'for the death of one old man was scarcely worth disturbing' . . . (*tanti propter quam*, with subj.)

² Hint 7, i., and R. 69, Obs. 3.

³ Hint 7, iii.

⁴ Cum maxime

⁵ Hint 7, i.

Ex. 126.

Then the Consul arose¹ and poured forth the famous oration, the first Catilinarian, which² portrays more vividly an actual scene in Roman history than perhaps any other monument of antiquity. The position of the³ actor was a peculiar one. He was perfectly informed of the criminal's guilt, and⁴ he did not scruple to let him know it in terms which must⁵ bring conviction to his mind; but at the same time he dared not bring him to justice; he had too many friends in the Senate itself, too many timid people who would declare his guilt unproved, too many jealous people who would object to rigorous measures, and⁶ call them tyrannical. Cicero's object was to frighten him away from Rome, but⁷ to leave the way open; to make it impossible for him to show himself in the city and feel that he could be safe only in his camp.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hint 7, ii.

² Say 'than which monument, portraying as by an actual scene . . . I know not what more vivid has been handed down by antiquity.'

³ Hint 6, ii

⁴ Hint 7, iii.

⁵ Say 'he could not but believe'—
§ xxviii. G.

⁶ Say 'for that is tyrannical.'

⁷ R. 95, Obs. 1.

Ex. 127.

It will seem strange to some¹ that Cicero when he had certain information of Catiline's treason, instead of seizing him in the city, not only suffered but urged his escape² and forced him as it were to begin the war. But there was good reason for what he did, as he frequently intimates³ in his speeches ; he had many enemies among the nobility and Catiline many secret friends ; and though he was perfectly informed of the whole progress² and extent² of the plot, yet, the proofs not being ready to lay⁴ before the public, dissimulation prevailed and persuaded great numbers of his innocence : so that if he had imprisoned⁵ and punished him at the time as he deserved, the whole faction were prepared to raise a general clamour against him by representing his administration as a tyranny and the plot as a forgery⁶ contrived to support it.

¹ Make 'some' the subject of a verb.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Hint 9, i.

⁴ R. 95, Obs. 1.

⁵ Hint 7, i.

⁶ Hint 4, ii.—Say 'he had falsely invented (*ementior*) the plot.'

Ex. 128.

FREDERIC OF PRUSSIA.

Driven to despair, the unhappy youth tried to run away. Then¹ the fury of the old tyrant rose to madness. The Prince was an officer in the army ; his flight² was therefore desertion, and, in the moral code of Frederic William, desertion was the highest of all crimes. After months of cruel suspense³ Frederic learned⁴ that his life would be spared. He remained, however, long a prisoner ; but he was not on that account to be pitied. He⁵ found in his gaolers a tenderness which he had never found in his father ; his table was not sumptuous, but he had wholesome food in sufficient quantity to appease hunger, and he could play on the flute without having⁶ it broken over his head.—MACAULAY.

¹ Hint 7, ii ; see also Hint 9, i.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Hint 4, ii.

⁴ Hint 7, i.

⁵ Hint 6, i.

⁶ Make this the principal verb.

Ex. 129.

It now remained that the captain and I should enquire into one another's circumstances. I began first, and told him my whole history,¹ which he heard with an² attention even to amazement¹ and particularly at the³ wonderful manner of my being furnished with provisions and ammunition; and, indeed, as my story is a whole collection of wonders, it affected him deeply. But when he reflected how I seemed to have been preserved there on purpose to save his life, the tears ran down⁴ his face, and he could not speak a word more. After this, I refreshed him with such provision as I had, and showed him all the contrivances I had made.—DEFOE.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² Say 'the highest.'

³ § xxviii., F.

⁴ Say 'could not speak for tears,'
§ xxviii., E.

Ex. 130.

Cortes, receiving his commission with the warmest expressions¹ of respect and gratitude to the governor, immediately erected his standard before his own house, appeared in a military dress,² and assumed all the ensigns of his new dignity. His utmost activity and influence were exerted³ in persuading many of his old friends to engage in the service and in urging forward the preparations for the voyage. All his own funds together with what money he could raise⁴ by mortgaging⁵ his lands and Indians were expended in purchasing military stores and provisions, or in supplying the wants of such of his officers as were unable to equip themselves in a manner suitable to their rank.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² *Paludatus.*

³ Hint 9, i.—Use *nitor*, 'to strive.'

⁴ 'He could scrape together' (*conrado*).

⁵ *Pignori opponere.*

Ex. 131.

THE PLEBEIANS.

In fortune, in rank, in fame, the two husbands might be¹ equal, but the one suffered under the brand of social disparagement in comparison with the other. Irksome as this² might be to Licinius, it was doubtless doubly irksome to Licinius's wife. She² happened to be visiting one day at the house of her sister, and when a lictor knocked formally at the house of Sulpicius, who held at the time the office of military tribune in the place of Consul, expressed her innocent³ surprise at a ceremony with which, as a Plebeian's wife, she was unfamiliar. The consort of the ennobled patrician laughed⁴ scornfully at the ignorance of her ignoble sister, who complained with tears to her husband and her father, and engaged them to combine in effecting a reform which should⁵ raise her to equality with her haughty rival.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hint 7, i.

² Hint 7, iii.

³ Omit 'innocent.'

Hint 7, ii.

⁵ Say 'by which she might be more equal.'

Ex. 132.

As soon as Sulla had withdrawn to Asia, the demagogue¹ Cinna rose in the ascendant. Backed by a party among the people rather than by the mass of the commons, he avowed himself the reviver² of the recent order of things, demanded the recall³ of Marius and the exiles, the restoration³ of the laws of Sulpicius, the full and final emancipation³ of Italy. In the actual temper⁴ of the public mind, such⁵ demands could not fail to produce sedition in the forum. A disturbance ensued; blood was shed. But Cinna had miscalculated his strength. The new citizens upon whom he relied were⁶ few in number. The senate, with Octavius and some of the Tribunes, and a large part of the populace of the forum, banded⁷ themselves against him, and drove his partizans out of the city.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hint 5, ii.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Hint 4, iii.

⁴ Hint 4, ii.

⁵ Hint 6, ii.

⁶ Hint 7, i.

⁷ Hint 4, iii.

Ex. 133.

The strange appearance which had given the messenger the idea¹ of a wood moving is² easily solved. When³ the besieging army marched through the wood of Birnam, Malcolm, like a skilful general, instructed his officers to hew down every one a bough, and⁴ bear it before him, by way of concealing the true numbers of his host. This marching of the soldiers with boughs⁵ had at a distance the appearance which had frightened the messenger. Thus were the words of the spirits brought to pass in a sense different from that in which Macbeth had understood them, and one great hold⁶ of his confidence was gone.—LAMB.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² Say 'can be.'

³ Hint 6, i.

⁴ Hint 7, ii.

⁵ It is hardly necessary to repeat this idea at length in Latin.

⁶ Say 'had begun to lose'—Hint 9, i.

Ex. 134.

At this juncture of time it happened that the state of Venice had immediate need of the services of Othello, news¹ having arrived that the Turks with mighty preparation had² fitted out a fleet, which was bending its course to the island of Cyprus, with intent to regain that strong post from the Venetians, who then held it. In this emergency the state turned its eyes upon Othello, who alone was deemed adequate to conduct the defence³ of Cyprus against the Turks. So that Othello, now summoned before the senate, stood in their presence at once as a candidate for a great state employment, and as a culprit charged with offences which by the laws of Venice were made capital.—LAMB.

¹ Say 'it having been reported.'

² Hint 7, i.

³ Hint 4, iii.

Ex. 135.

HAMPDEN.

The languid proceedings¹ of Essex were loudly condemned by the troops. All² the ardent and daring spirits in the parliamentary³

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² Hint 7, ii., and § xxviii., D.

³ Say 'among the popular [leaders].'

party were eager to have Hampden at their head. Had his life been prolonged there is every reason to believe that the supreme command would have been entrusted to him. But it was decreed that, at this conjuncture, England should lose the only man who united ⁴ perfect disinterestedness to eminent talents, the only man who, being capable ⁵ of gaining the victory for her, was incapable of abusing that victory when gained.—MACAULAY.

⁴ Say 'endowed with,' &c.

⁵ R. 95, Obs. 1.

Ex. 136.

Then turning to his youngest daughter, Cordelia, he asked what she had to say; thinking no doubt that she would gladden ¹ his ears with the same loving speeches which her sisters had uttered, or rather ² that her expressions would be so much stronger than theirs, as she had always been his darling, and favoured by him above either of them. But Cordelia, disgusted with the flattery of her sisters whose hearts ³ she knew were far from their lips, and seeing that all their coaxing speeches were only intended to wheedle the old king out ⁴ of his dominions, that they and their husbands might reign in his life-time, made no other reply but this—that she loved his majesty according to her duty, neither more nor less.—LAMB.

¹ Omit this phrase in Latin.

² Omit 'rather.'

³ Say 'these were vain words far dis-

tant from the real sentiments of the mind.'

⁴ Say 'that he might abdicate.'

Ex. 137.

The unfortunate death of Polonius gave the king a pretence for sending Hamlet out of the kingdom. He would willingly have put him ¹ to death, fearing him as dangerous; but that he dreaded the people who loved Hamlet; and the queen, who with all her faults ² doted upon the prince, her son. So this subtle king, under

¹ Hint 6, ii.

² Hint 4, ii.

pretence of providing for Hamlet's safety, that he might not be called to account for Polonius' death, caused him to be³ conveyed on board a ship bound for England, under the care of two courtiers, by whom he despatched³ letters to the English court, requiring for special reasons, there pretended, that Hamlet should be put to death as soon as he³ landed on English ground.—LAMB.

³ Hint 7, i.

Ex. 138.

The next kindly intercourse between Basil and Gregory arose out of circumstances which followed the death of Gregory's brother, Cæsarius. On¹ his death-bed he had left² all his goods to the poor; a bequest which was³ interfered with, first by servants and others about him, who carried off at once all the valuables on which they could lay hands; and, after Gregory had come into possession of the residue, by the fraud of certain creditors, who appealed to the law on his refusing to satisfy them. Basil, on this occasion, gained him the interest of the Prefect of Constantinople, and another, whose influence was great at court.—NEWMAN.

¹ Hint 6, i.

² Hint 7, i.

³ R. 56.

Ex. 139.

Since poverty¹ is punished among us as a crime, it ought, at least, to be treated with the same lenity as other crimes: the offender ought not to languish at the will of him whom he has offended, but to be allowed some appeal to the justice of his country. There can be no reason why any debtor should be imprisoned, but that he may be compelled to payment; and a term should therefore be² fixed, in which the creditor should³ exhibit his accusation⁴ of concealed property. If such property can be discovered, let it be given to the creditor; if the charge be not offered, or cannot be proved, let the prisoner be dismissed.—JOHNSON.

¹ Hint 4, i.

² Hint 7, i.

³ R. 55.

⁴ Hint 4, ii.

Ex. 140.

It was¹ said that at Benares the natives had erected a temple to Hastings, and this story excited a strong sensation in England. Burke's observations on the apotheosis² were admirable. He saw no reason for astonishment, he said, in the incident which had been³ represented as so striking. He knew something of the mythology of the Brahmins. He knew that⁴ as they worshipped some gods from love, so they worshipped others from fear. He knew that⁵ they erected shrines, not only to the benignant deities of light and plenty, but also to the fiends who preside over small-pox and murder; nor did he at all dispute the claim⁶ of Mr. Hastings to be admitted into such a Pantheon.—MACAULAY.

¹ Hint 7, ii.

² Hint 5, iii.

³ R. 56.

⁴ Hint 7, iii.

⁵ R. 95, Obs. 1.

⁶ Hint 4, iii.

Ex. 141.

Bacon attempted¹ to mediate between his friend and the queen; and, we believe, honestly employed all his address for the purpose. But the task which he had undertaken was too difficult, delicate, and perilous, even for so wary² and dexterous an agent. He³ had to manage two spirits equally proud, resentful, and ungovernable. At⁴ Essex House he had to calm the rage of a youthful hero incensed by multiplied wrongs and humiliations, and then⁴ to pass to Whitehall for the purpose of soothing the peevishness of a sovereign whose temper, never gentle, had been rendered morbidly irritable by age, by declining health, and by the long habit of listening to flattery⁵ and exacting implicit obedience.⁶—MACAULAY.

¹ Hint 7, i.

² Use abstract nouns contrary to the general principle.

³ Say 'it was his to manage.'

⁴ Say 'who, when he had left the house of Essex . . . had to pass.'

⁵ Hint 4, i.

⁶ Hint 4, ii.

Ex. 142.

Cæsar, indeed, was¹ at that time chiefly known as a leader of fashion among the careless and dissolute youth of his class. The exploits of his early career might² raise a smile at the buoyant confidence they betokened, but betrayed² no depth of design or fixity of resolution, from which to augur the purpose³ of a life. When captured by the pirates, and required⁴ to produce a ransom of twenty talents, he had⁵ promised fifty, but at the same time pledged himself to bring his captors to punishment. While detained in their custody he had amused himself by reciting to them his plays and verses; nevertheless, he did⁶ not fail afterwards to keep his word with them, for he pursued them with his squadron, captured,⁵ and delivered them to his imperator.—MERIVALE.

¹ Hint 7, i.² Say 'you might smile . . . but not see.'³ Hint 4, ii.⁴ R. 63.⁵ Hint 7, i.⁶ Hint 7, ii.

Ex. 143.

Henry of Navarre was a resolute, active, and politic prince. He possessed indeed great humanity and mildness; but a humanity and mildness¹ that never stood in the way of his interests.² He never sought to be loved without³ putting himself in a condition to be feared. He used soft language with determined conduct. He asserted and maintained his authority in the gross, and distributed his acts of concession only in detail. He spent the income of his prerogatives nobly; but he took care not to break in upon the capital; never abandoning⁴ for a moment any of the claims which he made under the fundamental laws, nor sparing⁴ to shed the blood of those who opposed him, often in the field, sometimes upon the scaffold.—BURKE.

¹ R. 95, Obs. 1.² Hint 4, ii.³ Use *nisi*.⁴ Use a verb.

Ex. 144.

FALSE MODESTY.

While Xenophanes was called timorous, because he would not venture¹ his money in a game at dice, 'I confess,' said he, 'that I am exceeding timorous, because I dare not do an ill thing.' On the contrary, a man of vicious modesty complies² with everything, and is only fearful of doing what may look singular in the company where he is engaged. He falls in with³ the torrent, and lets⁴ himself go to every action or discourse however unjustifiable in itself, so it be in vogue among the present party. Thus false modesty exposes⁵ us not only to such actions as are indiscreet but very often to such as are highly criminal.

¹ Say 'play at dice.'

² Hint 7, i.

³ Use phrase *secundâ aquâ*.

⁴ Say 'does not abstain.'

⁵ Say 'we are led.'

Ex. 145.

SWIFT.

His bitterness, his scorn, his rage, his subsequent misanthropy, are¹ ascribed by some panegyrists to a deliberate conviction² of mankind's unworthiness,³ and a desire to amend them⁴ by castigating. His⁴ youth was bitter, as that of a great genius bound down by ignoble ties, and powerless in a mean dependence;² his age was bitter, like that of a great genius that had⁵ fought the battle and nearly won it, and lost it, and thought of it⁶ afterwards writhing in a lonely exile. A⁷ man may attribute to the gods, if he likes, what is caused by his own fury, or disappointment, or self-will. What⁷ public man, what statesman projecting⁸ a coup, what king determined on an invasion, what satirist meditating an onslaught⁹ can't give a pretext for his move?—THACKERAY.

¹ R. 56.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Hint 4, i.

⁴ Hint 7, iii.

⁵ Hint 7, i. ; omit 'fought.'

⁶ Say 'thought of the evils of his whole life.'

⁷ Hint 6, i.

⁸ Say 'about to attempt a revolution.'

⁹ Hint 4, ii.

Ex. 146.

The¹ utmost we can hope for in this world is contentment:² if we aim at anything higher, we shall meet with nothing but grief and disappointments. A³ man should direct all his studies and endeavours to making himself easy now and happy hereafter. The truth of it is, if all the happiness that is dispersed through the whole race of mankind in this world were drawn together and put into the possession of any single man, it would not make a very⁴ happy being. Though on the contrary, if the miseries of the whole species were fixed in a single person, they would make a very miserable one.—ADDISON.

¹ Hint 6, ii.² Hint 7, i.³ Hint 6, i.⁴ Omit 'very.'

Ex. 147.

SOLON AND PEISTRATUS.

What was it, service¹ or injury,¹ that these men did to Homer? No one question, in the whole series of Homeric questions, is more perplexing. Homer did a great service, if tradition is right, to both of them,² by settling³ a legal dispute for each; so that it was a knavish return³ for such national benefits if they—if these⁴ two Athenian statesmen—went about⁵ to undermine that text from which they had reaped such singular fruits in their own administration¹. Yet something certainly they must have done to Homer; in that point all are agreed; but what it was remains a mystery⁶ to this hour.—DE QUINCEY.

¹ Hint 4, ii.² Hint 6, ii.³ Hint 4, ii.⁴ Hint 7, iii.⁵ Omit this phrase.⁶ Hint 4, i.

Ex. 148.

I had¹ some knowledge of music, with a tolerable voice: I now turned what was once my² amusement into a present means of subsistence. I passed among the harmless peasants of Flanders, and among such of the poor of France as were poor enough to be very merry, for I ever found them sprightly in proportion to³ their

¹ Hint 7, ii.² R. 9.³ R. 30, Obs. 2.

wants. Whenever I approached a peasant's house towards night-fall, I played one of my merriest tunes, and that procured⁴ me not only a night's lodging, but subsistence for the next day; but in truth I must own, whenever I attempted to entertain persons of a higher rank, they always thought my performance⁵ odious, and never made me any return for my endeavours⁶ to please them.—GOLDSMITH.

⁴ Hint 9, i.

⁵ Hint 4, i.

⁶ Hint 4, ii.

Ex. 149.

GAMING.

I think it is below reasonable creatures to be altogether conversant in such diversions as are¹ merely innocent, and have nothing else to recommend them, but that there is no hurt in them. Whether any kind of gaming has even thus² much to say for itself, I shall not determine; but I think it is very wonderful to see persons of the best sense passing away a dozen³ hours together in shuffling and dividing a pack of cards⁴ with no other conversation but a few game⁵ phrases, and no other ideas but those of black or red⁶ spots arranged together in different figures.—ADDISON.

¹ Hint 7, i.

² Hint 6, ii.

³ Say 'four watches.'

⁴ Say 'in throwing dice.'

⁵ Hint 5, ii.

⁶ Omit 'or red.'

Ex. 150.

GOLDSMITH.

It is a singular fact, which we have on his own authority, that until his thirtieth year, it never entered into his head that literature was his natural¹ vocation. That vanity which has been sometimes so falsely attributed² to Goldsmith was compatible, we see, if at all it existed, with the humblest estimate of himself. Still, however much this³ deepens our regard for a man of so much genius united with so much simplicity and unassumingness, humility⁴ would not be likely to raise his salary; and we must not forget that his own want of esteem would reasonably operate on the terms offered² by Griffiths.—DE QUINCEY.

¹ Hint 4, ii, use *oportet*.

² R. 56.

³ Hint 6, ii.

⁴ Say 'this quality.'

Ex. 151.

GEORGE THE THIRD.

Next came a question¹ which had been suggested by my name. Had my family come into England² with the Huguenots at the revocation of the Edict of Nantes? This was a tender point with me; of all things I could not endure to be supposed of French³ descent; yet, it was a vexation I had constantly to face, as most people supposed that my name argued a French origin, whereas a Norman origin argued pretty certainly an origin not French.⁴ I replied with some haste, “Please your Majesty, the family has been in England since the conquest.”⁵ It is probable that I coloured, or showed some mark of discomposure,¹ with which, however, the king was⁶ not displeased, for he smiled and said, “How do you know that?”—DE QUINCEY.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² Say ‘from Sicily owing to the arrival of Pyrrhus.’

³ Say ‘Greek.’

⁴ Say ‘though it is well known that our ancestors hated the Greeks.’

⁵ Say ‘since Alba Longa was destroyed.’

⁶ Hint 7, i.

Ex. 152.

The bravest and freest nations have sometimes submitted to a temporary surrender of their liberties, in order to establish them for ever. At a crisis of public calamity¹ or danger, the prudence of the State placed a confidence in the virtue of some distinguished citizen, and gave him power sufficient to preserve or to oppress his country. Such was² the Roman dictator, and while his office was confined to a short period, and only applied as a remedy to the disasters³ of an unsuccessful war, it was usually attended with the most important advantages, and left no dangerous precedent behind.—JUNIUS.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² Say ‘is among us,’

³ R. 56.

Ex. 153.

The people of England¹ are loyal to the house² of Hanover, not from a preference of one family to another, but from a conviction that the establishment of that family was necessary to the support of their civil and religious liberties.³ This, Sir, is a principle of allegiance equally solid and rational; fit for Englishmen to adopt, and well worthy of your Majesty's⁴ encouragement. We cannot long be deluded by nominal distinctions. The name of Stuart,⁵ of itself, is only contemptible; armed⁶ with the sovereign authority, their principles⁷ are formidable. The prince, who imitates their conduct, should be warned by their example; and while he plumes himself upon the security⁷ of his title to the crown, should remember that, as it was acquired by one revolution, it may be lost by another.—JUNIUS.

¹ Say 'Rome.'

² Say 'the Claudi.

³ Hint 5, iii.

⁴ *Imperator.*

⁵ *Gens Julia.*

⁶ Hint 5, i.

⁷ Hint 4, i.

Ex. 154.

But,¹ my Lord, since you have laboured to destroy the substance of the trial,² why should you suffer the form of the verdict to remain? Why force twelve honest men,³ in palpable violation of their oaths, to pronounce their fellow-subject a guilty man, when you forbid their enquiring into the only circumstances which, in the eye of law and reason, constitutes guilt—the malignity or innocence of his intentions? But I understand your Lordship, if you could succeed in making trial by jury useless and ridiculous, you might then with greater safety introduce a bill for enlarging the jurisdiction of the court,⁵ and extending your favorite trial by interrogatories to every question in which the life or liberty of an Englishman is concerned.—JUNIUS.

¹ *At enim.*

² Say 'the knowledge of the charge.'

³ Say 'Judices' and omit 'twelve.'

⁴ Say 'to perjure themselves.'

⁵ Say 'of the Prætor.'

Ex. 155.

As a good picture may be without a group, so a good tragedy may subsist without a chorus, notwithstanding any reasons which have been given by Dacier to the contrary. Monsieur Racine has indeed used it in his *Esther*, but not that he found any necessity of it as the French critic would insinuate. The chorus at St. Cyr was only to give young ladies an occasion of entertaining the king with vocal music, and of commanding their own voices. The play itself was never intended for the public stage;¹ nor, without any disparagement² to the learned author, could possibly have succeeded there, and much less in the translation of it here.—DRYDEN.

¹ Say 'to be taught before the people.' |

² Say 'without offence.'

Ex. 156.

The imitation¹ of nature is therefore justly considered as the general, and indeed the only, rule of pleasing, both in poetry² and in painting. Aristotle tells us, that imitation pleases, because it affords matter³ for a reasoner to enquire into the truth or falsehood of imitation, by comparing its likeness or unlikeness with the original; but by this rule, every speculation in nature,⁴ whose truth falls under the inquiry of a philosopher, must produce the same delight, which is not true. I should rather assign another reason; truth is the object of our understanding, as good is of our will; and the⁵ understanding can be no more delighted with a lie, than the will can choose an apparent evil.—DRYDEN.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Say 'occasion.'

⁴ Say 'all discussing of philosophers about each thing what is the truth.'

⁵ Hint 6, ii.

Ex. 157.

Virgil is so exact in every word, that none can be changed but for a worse; nor any one removed from its place, but the harmony¹ will be altered. He pretends sometimes to trip; but it is only to make you think him in danger of a fall, when he is most secure. Like a skilful dancer on the ropes (if you will pardon the meanness

¹ Say 'the sweetness of the poem be removed.'

of the similitude), who slips willingly and makes a seeming stumble, that you may think him in great hazard² to break³ his neck, while at the same time he is only giving⁴ you a proof of his great dexterity.⁵—DRYDEN.

² *Tantum non.*

³ Say ‘to fall down headlong.’

⁴ Hint 9, i.

⁵ Hint 4, ii.

Ex. 158.

GEORGE THE SECOND.

He overcame a dangerous rebellion, abetted¹ by foreign force, and raging in the heart of his kingdoms; and thereby destroyed the seeds of all future rebellion that could arise upon the same principle. He carried the glory, the power, the commerce of England, to a height² unknown even to this renowned nation in the times of its greatest prosperity;³ and he left his succession resting on the true and only true foundation⁴ of all national and all regal greatness; affection⁵ at home, reputation abroad, trust in allies, terror in rival nations. The most ardent lover of his country cannot wish for Great Britain a happier fate than to continue as she was then left.—BURKE.

¹ Hint 7, iii, and R. 56.

² Use *talis . . . qualis.*

³ Hint 4, ii.

⁴ Hint 4, ii.

⁵ Hint 7, i.

Ex. 159.

To make a government requires no great prudence. Settle the seat of power, teach obedience,¹ and the work is done. To give freedom is still more easy. It² is not necessary to guide; it only requires to let go the rein. But to form a Free Government; that is to temper³ together these opposite elements of liberty and restraint in one consistent³ work, requires much thought; deep reflection; a sagacious, powerful, and combining mind. This I do not find in those who take the lead in the national assembly.

¹ Hint 4, ii.

Hint 6, ii.

³ Say ‘to join peacefully.’

Perhaps they are not so miserably deficient as they appear. I⁴ rather believe it. It⁴ would put them below the common level of human understanding.—BURKE.

⁴ Hint 6, i.

Ex. 160.

THE FRENCH REVOLUTION.

I have it sometimes given out in France,¹ that what is doing among you is after the example of England. I beg leave to affirm, that scarcely anything done with you has originated from the practice or prevalent² opinions of this people. Let me add, that we are as unwilling to learn these lessons from France, as we are sure that we never taught them to that nation. The cabals here who take a sort of share in your transactions as yet consist of but an handful of people. If unfortunately they should seriously attempt anything here in imitation of what has been done with you, I venture to prophesy that with some trouble to their country they will soon accomplish their own destruction.—BURKE.

¹ Say 'among you.'

|

² Hint 5, ii.

Ex. 161.

But yesterday, and England might have stood against the world; now none so poor as to do her reverence!¹ The people whom we at first despised as rebels, but whom we now acknowledge as enemies, are abetted² against us, supplied with every military store, their interest consulted, and their ambassadors entertained by our inveterate enemy; and ministers³ do not, and dare not interpose with dignity and effect⁴. The desperate state of our army abroad is in part known. No man more highly esteems and honours the English troops than I do: I know⁵ their virtues and their valour: I know they can achieve anything but impossibilities; and I know that the conquest of English America is an impossibility. You cannot, my lords, you cannot conquer America.—CHATHAM.

¹ Paraphrase the whole quotation, Hint 5, iii.

² R. 56, and Hint 9, i.

³ Say 'we.'

⁴ Say 'as the nature (ratio) of the inquiry, and [our] insulted majesty demands.'

⁵ Hint 7, ii.

Ex. 162.

THE SLAVE TRADE.

Allow of this principle, as applied¹ to Africa, and I shall be glad to know why it might not also have been applied to ancient and uncivilized Britain. Why might not some Roman Senator, reasoning on the principles of some honorable gentleman, and pointing to British barbarians, have predicted with equal boldness, “*There* is a people that will never rise² to civilization—*there* is a people destined never to be free—a people without the understanding necessary for the attainment of useful arts; depressed by the hand of nature below the level³ of the human species; and created to form a supply⁴ of slaves for the rest of the world?” Might not this have been said, according to the principles which we now hear stated, in all respects as fairly and as truly of Britain herself, at that period of her history, as it can now be said by us of the inhabitants of Africa?—PITT.

¹ Say ‘of treating the Africans.’

² Hint 5, i, Say ‘by influenced by.’

³ Hint 5, i.

⁴ Hint 4, ii.

Ex. 163.

LETTER TO CHESTERFIELD.

Seven years, my lord, have now passed since I waited in your outward rooms, or was repulsed from your door, during which time I have been pushing on my work through difficulties, of which it is useless to complain, and have brought it at last to the verge of completion,¹ without one act of assistance, one word of encouragement,² or one smile of favour.² Such treatment³ I did not expect, for I never had a patron before. Is not a patron, my lord, one who looks with unconcern on a man struggling in the waters, and when he has reached the ground encumbers him with help? The notice³ which you have been pleased to take of my labours, had it been early, had been kind; but it⁴ has been delayed till I am indifferent, and cannot enjoy it; till I am solitary, and⁵ cannot impart it; till I am known, and do not want it.—JOHNSON.

¹ Use partic. of *profligo*.

² Hint 9, i.

³ Hint 7, i.

⁴ Hint 9, i.

⁵ Hint 7, i.

Ex. 164.
CHARLEMAGNE.

His literary merits¹ are attested by the foundation of schools, the introduction of arts, the works which were² published in his name, and his familiar connexion³ with the subjects and strangers whom he invited to his court to educate both the prince and the people. His own studies were tardy, laborious and imperfect; if⁴ he spoke Latin and understood Greek, he derived the rudiments of knowledge from conversation rather than from books; and in his mature age the emperor strove to acquire the practise of writing, which every peasant now learns in his infancy. The dignity of his person, the length of his reign, the prosperity of his arms, the origin of his government, and the reverence of distant nations distinguished him⁵ from the royal crowd, and⁶ Europe dates⁵ a new era from his restoration⁷ of the western empire.—GIBBON.

¹ Hint 4, ii.² R. 56.³ Hint 4, i.⁴ Quamquam.⁵ Hint 9, i.⁶ Hint 7, ii.⁷ Hint 7, i.

Ex. 165.

The war of France is of another sort; the war of France is a war of interest; it was¹ her interest first induced her to engage in it, and it is by that interest that she will¹ measure its continuance. Turn your force at once against her;² attack her wherever she is exposed, crush her commerce wherever you can, make her feel heavy and immediate distress throughout the nation; the people will soon cry out to their government. Whilst the advantages she promises herself are remote and uncertain, inflict present evils and distresses upon her subjects: the³ people will become discontented and clamorous: she will find the having entered into this business a bad bargain:⁴ and⁵ you will force her to desert an ally that brings so much trouble and distress and the advantages of whose alliance may never take effect.—C. J. FOX.

¹ Hint 9, i.² Say 'them.'³ Hint 6, i.⁴ Hint 5, i.⁵ Hint 7, ii.

Ex. 166.

And now, gentlemen, let me take to myself some degree of honest pride on the nature of the charges against me. I¹ do not stand here before you accused of venality or of neglect of duty. It is not said, that in the long period of my service I have, in a single instance, sacrificed the slightest of your interests to my ambition or to my fortune. It is not alleged, that to gratify² any anger or revenge of my own, or of my party, I have had a share in wronging or oppressing any description of men, or any one man in any description. No! the charges against me are all of one kind, that I have pushed³ the principles of general justice and benevolence too far; further than a cautious policy⁴ would warrant; and further than the opinions of many would go along with me. In every accident which may happen through life, I will call to mind this accusation, and be comforted.—BURKE.

¹ Hint 6, i.

² Use proposition.

³ Say 'used.'

⁴ Hint 4, i.

Ex. 167.

It is of course impossible accurately to describe the various feelings with which one in Constantine's peculiar position was likely to regard Christianity,¹ yet, the joint effect of them all may be gathered from his actual conduct,² and the state of the civilised world³ at the time. He found his empire distracted with civil and religious⁴ dissensions which tended to the dissolution of society, at a time, too, when the barbarians without were pressing upon it with a vigour, formidable in itself, but far more menacing in consequence of the decay⁵ of the ancient spirit of Rome. He perceived the power of its old polytheism⁶ from whatever cause exhausted, and a newly risen philosophy vainly endeavouring to resuscitate a mythology which had done its work,⁷ and now, like all things of earth, was fast returning to the dust from which it came.—NEWMAN.

¹ Hint 4, i.

² Hint 4, ii.

³ Say 'the whole world.'

⁴ Hint 5, iii.

⁵ Hint 4, iii.

⁶ Say 'worship of the gods.'

⁷ Hint 5, i.

VOCABULARY.

FOR EXERCISES, PARTS I. AND II.

<i>About (prep.)</i> , de, abl.	advice, consilium
<i>abroad</i> , militiæ	advice, give, monere
<i>absent (to be)</i> , abesse	advice, take, obtemperare con-
<i>absent from, to be</i> , detrectare	affair, res, ei, lis [silio
<i>abstain</i> , abstinere	affairs, res, erum
<i>accept</i> , accipere	afraid, to be almost, vix audere
<i>accomplish</i> , facere	afraid of, or for, metuo
<i>according to</i> , secundum, acc.	Africa, Africa
<i>accost</i> , alloqui	after, post, acc.
<i>accuse</i> , accusare	after dark, multa de nocte
<i>accuser, use partic.</i>	after the manner of, in modum,
<i>accustomed, to be</i> , consuescere, solere	afterwards, posthac [gen.
<i>acquaint with, to</i> , certiorem facere	again, iterum
<i>acquire, acquirere</i>	against, contra, acc.
<i>acquit, absolvere</i>	age, old, senectus, -utis
<i>across, trans, acc.</i>	age (period of time), saeculum
<i>act, actio</i>	age (time of life), aetas
<i>act, to, agere, se gerere</i>	agree, consentire, assentiri, also convenit, impers.
<i>act upon, sequi</i>	agreed, to be, constat (impers.)
<i>added, to be, accedere</i>	agriculture, agri cultura
<i>addicted to, deditus</i>	aid, auxilium
<i>address, alloqui</i>	aim at (to), petere
<i>admire, mirari</i>	. alas! hei!
<i>admirer, laudator</i>	alive, vivus
<i>admit, tenere</i>	all, omnis; all men, omnes
<i>adopt, uti</i>	all, cuncti
<i>advance, progredi</i>	all else, reliqua
<i>advance (up), subire</i>	alliance, societas
<i>advantage, to be of, interest</i>	allow, permittere, cedere
<i>advantage, to be an, bono esse, prodesse</i>	ally, socius
	alone, solus, -ius
	already, jam

although, quamvis	art, ars
always, semper	as far as, tenus, abl.
ambassador, legatus	as much, par
ambuscade, insidiæ	ashamed, to be, pudet (impers.), pudore affici
among, inter, acc.	aside, to be set, nihili haberí
amuse, oblectare	ask, rogare, a question, interro- gare
amusement, oblectamentum	assemble, convenire
ancient, antiquus	assent, assentiri
angry, to be, irasci	assist, adjuvare
animate, excitare	assistance, auxilium
animated, animatus	assistance, to come to, subven- ire
anoint with oil, ungere	astronomer, astrologus
another, alter, alias	Athenian, Atheniensis
another's, alienus	Athens, Athenæ
answer, responsum	attack, impetus, -ūs
answer, to, respondere	attack, to, oppugnare
anxiety, sollicitudo, -inis, anxie- tas	attempt, to make an, conari
anxious, to be, cupere	attend to, curare
anxious suspense, to be in, animi pendere	audience, audientes
any more, amplius	auspices, see 'take'
appear, aspici, se ostendere, ap- parere	avarice, avaritia
appear ridiculous, risum civibus movere	avoid, detrectare
appoint, edicere	await, exspectare
appointed, statutus	away, to be, abesse
approach, accedere	Back, tergum, humeri
approve, probare, laudare	baggage, impedimenta
ardently, vehementer	banish, expellere
armed, armatus	banquet, epulæ
arms, arma	bargain, pretium
arms our, exercitus noster	base, turpis
army, exercitus, -ūs	basely, nefarie
aroused, excitus	battle, pugna, prælium
arrest, in custodiam trahere	bear, ferre, pati, tolerare
arrival, adventus, -ūs	beat, caedere
arrive, pervenire	beat to death, occidere

<i>beautiful</i> , pulcher, -ra, -rum	<i>both sides, on</i> , utrimque
<i>beauty</i> , pulchritudo	<i>blot out</i> , delere
<i>become</i> , fieri	<i>bought (can be)</i> , constare
<i>before</i> , ad, acc., coram, abl.	<i>boyhood, in his</i> , puer
<i>beginning</i> , principium	<i>brave</i> , fortis
<i>behalf of</i> , in, pro, abl.	<i>bravery</i> , virtus, utis
<i>Belgians</i> , Belgæ	<i>break (pledges)</i> , violare
<i>believe</i> , credere	<i>break down</i> , dissolvere
<i>belonging to one, not</i> , alienus	<i>breasts, in our, say, 'in us'</i>
<i>beloved</i> , amatus	<i>breakfast</i> , jentaculum
<i>benefactor, to be</i> , beneficere	<i>bribery and corruption</i> , ambitus,
<i>benefit</i> , beneficium	<i>-ūs</i>
<i>benefit of, to be for</i> , interest (im- pers.)	<i>bridge</i> , pons
<i>benefit (to)</i> , prodesse	<i>brief</i> , brevis
<i>benevolence</i> , benevolentia	<i>bring forward</i> , proferre
<i>bent on, to be, say, 'to be deter- mined'</i>	<i>bring (into danger)</i> , adducere
<i>beseech, obsecrari</i>	<i>bring woes on, in mala addu- cere</i>
<i>beside the mark</i> , nihil ad rem	<i>Briton</i> , Britannus
<i>bethink oneself, in mentem sibi venire</i>	<i>broad day, in</i> , de die
<i>betray, prodere</i>	<i>brother</i> , frater
<i>betray (trust), violare</i>	<i>build, ædificare</i>
<i>beware, cavere</i>	<i>burden, onus, -eris</i>
<i>beware of, cavere</i>	<i>burn to death</i> , vivum comburere
<i>beware of, noli with infin.</i>	<i>by (prep.), per, acc..</i>
<i>beyond, præter, acc.</i>	<i>by no means, nequaquam</i>
<i>bidding, use jubere (verb)</i>	<i>bystander, use astare, to stand near</i>
<i>bind, tenere</i>	<i>Call, nuncupare</i>
<i>blame, to, culpare</i>	<i>calm, tranquillus</i>
<i>blood, sanguis</i>	<i>calmly, tranquille</i>
<i>bloody, atrox</i>	<i>camp, castra (n. pl.)</i>
<i>bloodshed, sanguis</i>	<i>campaigns, see 'serve.'</i>
<i>blow, ictus, -ūs</i>	<i>capital (punishment), use caput</i>
<i>boast, gloria</i>	<i>captive, captivus</i>
<i>body, corpus, -oris</i>	<i>capture, capere</i>
<i>book, liber, -bri</i>	<i>Capua, Capua</i>
<i>boon, beneficium</i>	<i>care, cura</i>

<i>care, to, curare</i>	<i>child, puer</i>
<i>care for, æstimare</i>	<i>circus, circus</i>
<i>care of, take, curare</i>	<i>circumstance, res, ei</i>
<i>care, to take, cavēre</i>	<i>citizenship, civitas</i>
<i>carefully, diligenter</i>	<i>citizen, cives, -is</i>
<i>carelessly, negligenter</i>	<i>city, urbs</i>
<i>carry, portare</i>	<i>city (adj.), urbanus</i>
<i>carry out, exsequi</i>	<i>clear, to be, constare</i>
<i>Carthage, Carthago, -inis</i>	<i>clemency, misericordia</i>
<i>Carthaginians, Carthaginien-</i>	<i>climate (in bad sense), cæli in-</i>
<i>ses</i>	<i>temperies</i>
<i>case, res, ei</i>	<i>climb, ascendo</i>
<i>casting lots (after), sortito</i>	<i>closely, diligenter</i>
<i>catch, capere</i>	<i>close order, in, quadrato agmine</i>
<i>Catiline, Catilina</i>	<i>clothed, vestitus</i>
<i>cause, causa</i>	<i>coalition, use <i>periphrasis with</i></i>
<i>cause, my, say 'myself,' ego</i>	<i>conjungere</i>
<i>cause, to, cogere</i>	<i>cohort, cohors</i>
<i>caution, see 'need'</i>	<i>combatants, pugnantes</i>
<i>cautious, cautus</i>	<i>come, venire</i>
<i>cautiously, caute</i>	<i>come back, redire</i>
<i>cavalry, equitatus, -ūs</i>	<i>come on, incidere in</i>
<i>cease, desinere</i>	<i>come up, subvenire</i>
<i>cease acting upon, declinare</i>	<i>comfort (words of), consolatorius</i>
<i>centaur, centaurus</i>	<i>command, imperare</i>
<i>certain, certus</i>	<i>commentaries, commentaria</i>
<i>certain (it is), constat</i>	<i>commence, inire</i>
<i>certainly, certissime</i>	<i>commonly, vulgo</i>
<i>certainly, procul dubio</i>	<i>companion, socius</i>
<i>challenge, provocare</i>	<i>compel to pass, mittere</i>
<i>change, mutare</i>	<i>complete, finitus</i>
<i>charge, accusatio</i>	<i>complete (rest), say 'completely,'</i>
<i>charge, crimen, -inis</i>	<i>plene</i>
<i>cheap, parvo</i>	<i>complete, to, absolvere</i>
<i>cheat, fraudare</i>	<i>completely, absolute</i>
<i>cheerful, laetus</i>	<i>conceal, celare</i>
<i>cheese, caseus</i>	<i>conclude, finire</i>
<i>chief, princeps</i>	<i>concourse of, large, plurimi simul</i>
<i>chieftain, dux</i>	<i>condemn, damnare</i>

<i>condiment</i> , condimentum	<i>cost</i> (<i>to one's</i>), detrimentum
<i>condition</i> , conditio, status, -ūs	<i>cost</i> (<i>to one's</i>) dolens
<i>confusion</i> , confusio	<i>counsel</i> (<i>to take</i>), consulēre
<i>congratulate</i> , gratulari	<i>count</i> , annumerare
<i>conquer</i> , vincēre	<i>countenance</i> , vultus, -ūs
<i>conquered</i> , victus	<i>country</i> , rus, -ūris
<i>consider</i> , putare, habēre	<i>country</i> (<i>one's</i>), patria
<i>consequences</i> , eventus, -ūs	<i>country life</i> , say 'to live in the country'
<i>consequence</i> , <i>to be of</i> , refert, <i>im-pers.</i>	<i>country villa or house</i> , villa
<i>considered</i> (<i>matter</i>), perpen-dēre	<i>courage</i> , fortitudo
<i>considerately</i> , use 'benignus,'	<i>course of, in the</i> , inter (<i>acc. with gerund</i>)
<i>considerate</i>	<i>course (wisdom of)</i> , say 'act wisely'
<i>considered, to be</i> (<i>partic.</i>), ha-bendus	<i>courses (evil)</i> , say 'life'
<i>consistent</i> (<i>to be</i>), constare	<i>covetous of</i> , appetens
<i>constant</i> , continuus, firmus	<i>coward</i> , ignavus
<i>constitution</i> , leges	<i>cowardice</i> , ignavia
<i>consul</i> , consul	<i>cowardly</i> , ignavus
<i>consulship</i> , consulatus, -ūs	<i>crafty</i> , callidus
<i>consult</i> , consulēre	<i>crash</i> , strepitus, -ūs
<i>consult the interests of</i> , consulēre, <i>providēre</i>	<i>Crassus</i> , Crassus
<i>contingents</i> , auxilia	<i>crime</i> , injuria, scelus, -eris
<i>continue</i> , pergēre	<i>criminal</i> , sceleratus
<i>contrary to</i> , contra, <i>acc.</i> , see also 'conscience'	<i>criminal (vile)</i> , homo sceleratus
<i>contrary to one's conscience</i> , mala fide	<i>crisis</i> , discrimen
<i>contribute</i> , afferre	<i>cross</i> , <i>to</i> , trajicēre
<i>control</i> , moderari	<i>cross over</i> , transmittēre in, <i>acc.</i>
<i>convict</i> , convincēre, damnare	<i>crow</i> , cornix
<i>convinced, to be</i> , intelligere	<i>crown</i> , corona
<i>Corinth</i> , Corinthus	<i>cruel</i> , crudelis
<i>corn</i> , frumentum, annonā	<i>cry</i> , flēre
<i>correspondent, a bad</i> (<i>use a paraphrase</i>)	<i>cry out</i> , exclamare
<i>cost</i> , stare	<i>Cunctator</i> , Cunctator
	<i>cure</i> , <i>to</i> , sanare
	<i>current</i> , flumen
	<i>cut off</i> , intercludēre
	<i>curule</i> , curulis

custom, mos, -oris, consuetudo, -inis	deny, negare
cut, secare	depart, proficisci, decedere, abire
	departure (as exile), ire in exilium
Daily, quotidie	deplorable, more, pejus
danger, periculum	desert, derelinquere, relinquere
danger, to be in, periclitari	desert (of fortune), in aliam partem transire
dangerous, periculosus	deserve, mereri
dangerous enterprise, see 'danger'	design, consilium
day, dies	desire (to), velle, cupere
day, every, quotidie	desirous, cupidus
day, by, die	despair, desperare
date, dies	despair (to be in), see 'to despair'
dead, mortuus	desperate, desperatus
deadliest enemy, inimicissimus	despise, contemnere
dealt with, to be, pati	despised, spernendus
dear, to be, care vendi	destroy, occidere, extirpare, diripere
death, mors	destroy (the state), evertere
death (condemned to), use 'caput'	destroyed, to be, perire
debt, aes alienum	deter, prohibere
deceitfully, fraudulenter	determination, sententia
deceive, decipere	determine, decernere, statuere
decisive battle, universæ rei dic- micatio	devote oneself, incumbere
declare, profiteri, affirmare	dictator, dictator
decreed, to be, placet (impers.)	dictatorship, use 'dictator'
deep, altus	die, mori
defence, defensio, subsidium	differ, dissidere
defence, oratio pro se	difference (there is a), interest inter, acc.
defend, defendere	different, diversus
defendant, reus	differently, aliter
defraud, fraudare	difficult, difficilis
delay, to, morari, cunctari	difficulties, angustiæ
deliberation, consultus, -ūs	difficulty, without, facile
delight, delectatio	dignity, dignitas
delight, to, delectare	diligence, with, diligenter
demand, jubere	dire (need), say 'much'
democracy, postestas popula- rium	

<i>direct</i> , <i>jubēre</i>	<i>drag</i> , <i>trahēre</i>
<i>disaffected</i> , <i>male affectus</i>	<i>drawn</i> , <i>strictus</i>
<i>disappointed</i> , <i>to feel</i> , <i>dolēre</i>	<i>dream</i> , <i>somnium</i>
<i>disaster</i> , <i>clades</i>	<i>dream (to)</i> , <i>somniare</i>
<i>discover</i> , <i>comperire</i> , <i>invenire</i> , <i>capēre</i>	<i>drink</i> , <i>bibēre</i>
<i>discovery (voyage of)</i> , <i>ad inves-</i> <i>tigandum</i>	<i>drive</i> , <i>agēre</i>
<i>disease</i> , <i>morbus</i>	<i>drive away</i> , <i>pellēre</i>
<i>disgraceful</i> , <i>turpissimus</i>	<i>drive out</i> , <i>pellēre</i>
<i>disgusted</i> , <i>to be</i> , <i>pudet (impers.)</i>	<i>during</i> , <i>per, acc.</i>
<i>dishonour</i> , <i>infamia</i> , <i>dedecus</i> , <i>-oris</i>	<i>duty</i> , <i>munus</i> , <i>-eris</i> , <i>quod opor-</i> <i>tet</i>
<i>dislike</i> , <i>nolle</i>	<i>duty</i> , <i>see 'do'</i>
<i>dismiss</i> , <i>movēre</i>	<i>duty</i> , <i>to be one's</i> , <i>debēre</i>
<i>dismount</i> , <i>equis pellēre</i>	<i>dying</i> , <i>periturus</i>
<i>disobey</i> , <i>facēre contra</i> , <i>acc.</i> , <i>male</i> <i>obtemperare</i>	<i>early dawn</i> , <i>prima lux</i>
<i>displease</i> , <i>displícēre</i> .	<i>early manhood</i> , <i>adolescentia</i>
<i>dispose</i> , <i>disponēre</i>	<i>early morning</i> , <i>in the</i> , <i>mane</i>
<i>disposition (use verb)</i> <i>affici</i> , <i>to</i> <i>be disposed</i>	<i>early youth</i> , <i>adolescentia</i>
<i>dissatisfied</i> , <i>to be</i> , <i>pœnitet</i> , <i>(im-</i> <i>pers.)</i>	<i>earn</i> , <i>merēri</i>
<i>distant (to be)</i> , <i>abesse</i>	<i>earnestly</i> , <i>impense</i>
<i>distinguish</i> , <i>insignem facere</i>	<i>earth</i> , <i>tellus</i> , <i>-uris</i>
<i>distinguished by</i> , <i>insignis</i>	<i>easy</i> , <i>facilis</i>
<i>distraction (weary of)</i> , <i>satietae</i> <i>expletus</i>	<i>effect</i> , <i>to</i> , <i>efficēre</i>
<i>disturb</i> , <i>turbare</i>	<i>effecting anything (without)</i> , <i>re-</i> <i>infecta</i>
<i>divine</i> , <i>divinus</i>	<i>efficiency (of army)</i> , <i>ut plene in-</i> <i>struatur</i>
<i>do</i> , <i>facēre</i> , <i>perficēre</i>	<i>effort</i> , <i>conatus</i> , <i>-ūs</i>
<i>do duty</i> , <i>officio satisfacēre</i>	<i>effrontery</i> , <i>impudentia</i>
<i>do much for</i> , <i>prodesse</i>	<i>elapse</i> , <i>intercedēre</i> , <i>elabi</i>
<i>do with (life, &c.)</i> , <i>impendēr</i>	<i>elections</i> , <i>comitia</i>
<i>doctor</i> , <i>medicus</i>	<i>eloquence</i> , <i>facundia</i>
<i>doctrine</i> , <i>doctrina</i>	<i>eloquent</i> , <i>eloquens</i>
<i>Dorian</i> , <i>Dorica</i>	<i>emergency</i> , <i>discrimen</i>
<i>doubt</i> , <i>to</i> , <i>dubitare</i>	<i>emperor</i> , <i>imperator</i>
<i>doubtful</i> , <i>see 'to doubt'</i>	<i>empire</i> , <i>imperium</i>
	<i>employ</i> , <i>adhibēre</i>
	<i>employ oneself in</i> , <i>id agēre ut</i>

<i>end</i> , use <i>finire</i> , 'to end'	<i>expectation</i> , <i>spes</i>
<i>endeavour</i> , <i>conari</i>	<i>expedition</i> , <i>iter</i> , <i>ineris</i> ; <i>expeditio</i>
<i>endowed with</i> , <i>prædictus</i> , <i>abl.</i>	
<i>enemy</i> , <i>inimicus</i> , <i>hostes</i>	<i>experience</i> , <i>fortuna</i> , <i>experientia</i>
<i>energetic</i> , <i>acer</i> , - <i>cri</i>	<i>expedition</i> , <i>exercitus</i> , - <i>ûs</i>
<i>engage in (enterprise)</i> , <i>aggredi</i>	<i>explain</i> , <i>explicare</i>
<i>enjoy</i> , <i>frui</i>	<i>exploits</i> , see 'perform'
<i>enjoyment</i> , <i>oblectatio</i>	<i>expose</i> , <i>deferre</i>
<i>enjoy rest</i> , <i>conquiescere</i>	<i>extcnt</i> , <i>to such an</i> , <i>in tantum</i>
<i>enmity</i> , <i>inimicitia</i>	<i>extortion</i> , <i>about</i> , <i>de repetundis</i>
<i>enormous</i> , <i>nefandus</i>	
<i>enough</i> , <i>satis</i>	<i>Fail</i> , <i>male vertere</i>
<i>enterprise</i> , <i>res</i> , <i>ei</i>	<i>faith</i> , <i>fides</i>
<i>enterprise</i> , see 'undertake'	<i>faithful</i> , <i>fidelis</i>
<i>entreaties</i> , <i>preces</i>	<i>fall</i> , <i>cadere</i>
<i>entrust</i> , <i>committere</i>	<i>fall into</i> , <i>incidere</i>
<i>envy</i> , <i>invidere</i>	<i>fall into (confusion)</i> , <i>permisceri</i>
<i>equal</i> , <i>æquus</i> , <i>non dispar</i>	<i>fall sick</i> , <i>ægrotans</i>
<i>equal (oneself)</i> , <i>æqualem</i> se dicere	<i>fallen</i> , <i>the</i> , <i>subjectus</i>
<i>escape</i> , <i>effugere</i>	<i>falsehoods</i> , <i>to tell</i> , <i>mentiri</i>
<i>especially</i> , <i>præsertim</i>	<i>family</i> , <i>gens</i> , <i>familia</i>
<i>even</i> , <i>par</i>	<i>famous</i> , <i>insignis</i>
<i>ever</i> , <i>unquam</i>	<i>farewell</i> , <i>vale</i>
<i>everyone</i> , <i>omnes</i> , <i>unusquisque</i>	<i>farm</i> , <i>prædium</i>
<i>everything</i> , <i>omnia</i>	<i>farthing</i> , <i>at a</i> , <i>flocci</i>
<i>evil</i> , <i>malum</i>	<i>father</i> , <i>pater</i>
<i>evil (courses)</i> , <i>flagitiosus</i>	<i>fault</i> , <i>culpa</i> , <i>delictum</i>
<i>examine</i> , <i>scrutari</i>	<i>favour</i> , <i>beneficium</i>
<i>except</i> , <i>nisi</i>	<i>favour of</i> , <i>to be in</i> , <i>prodesse</i>
<i>excessive</i> , <i>nimius</i>	<i>favour with (to be in)</i> , <i>use the</i> <i>active verb 'to favour'</i> , <i>favere</i>
<i>excessively</i> , <i>nimis</i>	<i>fear</i> , <i>timor</i>
<i>excitement</i> , <i>commotio animi</i>	<i>fear</i> , <i>to</i> , <i>timere</i>
<i>exhort</i> , <i>hortari</i>	<i>feared (to be much)</i> , <i>magno odio</i> <i>esse</i>
<i>exile</i> , <i>exilium</i>	<i>feed</i> , <i>vesci</i>
<i>exist</i> , <i>esse</i> , <i>existere</i>	<i>feel</i> , <i>sentire</i> , <i>habere</i>
<i>existence (peril of its)</i> , say 'very great,' <i>summus</i>	<i>few</i> , <i>pauci</i>
<i>expect</i> , <i>expectare</i> , <i>sperare</i>	<i>feeling</i> , <i>sensus</i> , - <i>ûs</i>

<i>ferocity</i> , atrocitas	foresee, prospicere
<i>fiercely</i> , acriter	forget, oblivisci
<i>fifteen</i> , quindecim	forgive, ignoscere, condonare
<i>fifth</i> , quintus	<i>Fortune</i> , Fortuna
<i>fight</i> , pugnam edere, commit- tere	fortunate, felix
<i>fill</i> , implere	forum, forum
<i>field</i> , ager, -gri	foundation (of city), use 'fundare,' 'to found,' or 'condere'
<i>filled</i> , refertus	<i>fraud</i> , fraus
<i>final</i> , supremus	free, liber, -era, -erum
<i>find</i> , invenire, reperire	free from, to be, carere, vacare
<i>fire</i> , ignis	free, to, absolvere, liberare
<i>firm</i> , firmus	friend, amicus
<i>fit</i> , to make, parare	friendship, amicitia
<i>five</i> , quinque	friendly (city) socius et amicus
<i>flames</i> , incendia (pl.).	from, a (ab), abl.
<i>flee from</i> , fugere	from all sides, undique
<i>flesh</i> , caro, -nis	front, those in, prima acies
<i>flock together</i> , convolare	full, plenus
<i>flow</i> , fluere, currere	full extent of (disaster), quam funestus
<i>follow</i> , sequi	full of fury, furibundus
<i>followers of</i> , viri	fully, plene
<i>following</i> , proximus	further, amplius
<i>folly</i> , stultitia	further (adj.), plura
<i>fool</i> , stultus	
<i>foolish</i> , stultus	
<i>foolish statement</i> , ineptiae	Gain advantage, proficere
<i>foot</i> , pes, -edis	gain, to, adipisci
<i>foot soldiers</i> , pedites	gain (intelligence) audire
<i>for</i> , nam, enim (encl.)	gain the reputation of, haberi
<i>for</i> , prae, abl.	gambling, alea
<i>force</i> , copiae	garment, vestis
<i>forage</i> , to, pabulare	garrison, custodia
<i>forager</i> , pabulator	gate, porta
<i>force</i> , cogere	Gaul, Gallia
<i>force a battle</i> , cogere, pugnare	general, imperator, dux
<i>foreign</i> , alienus	get, adipisci
<i>foreign (tongue)</i> , ignotus	get (intrans.), fieri
<i>foreigner</i> , peregrinus	get punishment, poenâ affici

gift, donum	hair's breadth, latum unguem
give, dare	half, dimidium
give back, reddere	hall, aula
give (battle), edere	hand over, dare
give verdict, decernere	happen, evenire
glory, laus	happen to, use forte, ' by chance '
go, ire	happiness, beatitudo
go on, geri	happy, felix
gods, di	hard, difficilis, durus
good, bonus	hardly, vix
good, to seem, placet (impers.)	harm, detrimentum
good marching order (in), quad-	harm (to do), obesse
rato agmine	harshly, to act, severum se gerere
good taste, elegantia	haste, to use, festinare
govern, gubernare	haste, with, celeriter
graciously, blande	hasten over, raptim agere
grammar, grammatica	hate, to, odi
grandson, nepos, -otis	hated, in odio habitus
grant, dare, concedere	hateful, to be, odio esse
grapes, uva	hatred, odium
gratitude, pro beneficiis gratia	have, to (in sense of to make), facere
gratitude, to show, gratiam pro beneficiis agere	have pity, misereri
great, magnus	health, valetudo
great (age), summus	health, see 'ruin'
greatly, nullum	hear, audire
Greece, Græcia	heat, ardores
grief, dolor, see also 'mortifi- cation'	heaven, cœlum, see also 'the gods'
grieve, dolere	heavens above! see R. 3, Obs. 2
gross miscarriage of justice, maxima injuria	heaven, by, divinitus
ground, locus, humus	heir, hæres
grow, adolescere	Hellespont, Hellespontus
guard, custodire	help, auxilium
guess, to, conjecturam facere	help, to, adjuvare, juvare
guilty, sceleratus	henceforth, dehinc, abhinc
	hesitate, dubitare
	high, altus
	higher (life), sublimior
Habits, mores	

<i>highest</i> , summus	<i>immensely</i> , maxime
<i>hill</i> , collis	<i>imminent</i> , imminens
<i>hinder</i> , obesse	<i>impassioned</i> , vehemens
<i>hold</i> (<i>elections</i>), habēre	<i>impede</i> , impedire
<i>home</i> , domus	<i>impediment</i> , impedimentum
<i>home</i> , <i>at</i> , domi	<i>implanted</i> , ingenitum
<i>honesty</i> , probitas	<i>implore</i> , postulare
<i>honesty</i> (<i>reputation of</i>), use ; <i>robust</i> , 'honest'	<i>impunity</i> , <i>with</i> , impune
<i>honour</i> , honor, decus, -oris	<i>inadvertence</i> , negligentia
<i>honour</i> , <i>of</i> , honestus	<i>incensed</i> , <i>to be</i> , irasci
<i>honour</i> , see 'to pay'	<i>inch</i> , uncia
<i>honour to</i> , in honore habēre	<i>incredible</i> , use verb 'to believe'
<i>hope</i> , spes, -ei	<i>incur charge of</i> , argui
<i>hope</i> , <i>to</i> , sperare	<i>incurable</i> , insanabilis
<i>Horace</i> , Horatius	<i>indifferent</i> , <i>to be</i> , flocci facēre
<i>horse</i> , equus, see also 'cavalry'	<i>indignity</i> , <i>an</i> , indignum
<i>horseback</i> , <i>on</i> , equo vectus	<i>indulge</i> , indulgēre
<i>hostage</i> , obses, -idis	<i>infamous conduct</i> , facinus, -oris
<i>hour</i> , hora	<i>infant</i> , infans
<i>house</i> , domus, -ūs	<i>infatuated</i> , vesanus
<i>household slave</i> , verna	<i>infection</i> , contagio
<i>how few</i> , quotusquisque	<i>inferior</i> , deterrimus
<i>how long?</i> quousque tandem?	<i>inferior force</i> , infirmiores copiæ
<i>human</i> , humanus	<i>infested</i> , infestus
<i>human</i> , use 'homo, -inis'	<i>inflict punishment</i> , damnare
<i>humanity</i> , humanitas	<i>inflict</i> (<i>punishment</i>), sumere
<i>hunting-knife</i> , cultrum	<i>influence</i> , <i>to have</i> , valēre
<i>hurry</i> , properare	<i>inform</i> , certiorem facēre
<i>husband</i> , vir, iri	<i>injure</i> , violare, nocēre
<i>idle</i> (<i>hour</i>), vacuus	<i>injure</i> , lædo, injuriam facēre
<i>ignorance</i> , ignorantia	<i>injured</i> , <i>to be</i> , injuriam accipēre
<i>ill</i> , invalidus	<i>injury</i> , injuria
<i>ill-treat</i> , injuriose tractare	<i>injustice</i> , injuria
<i>imitate</i> , imitari	<i>insignificant</i> , parvus
<i>immediate</i> , præsens	<i>instant</i> , punctum temporis
<i>immediately</i> sine mora	<i>instant</i> (<i>danger</i>), extremus
	<i>insult</i> , lacessare
	<i>instigation of</i> , <i>at the</i> , use <i>abl.</i> of auctor, 'instigator'

<i>in some way, aliquatenus</i>	<i>kingly power, regnum</i>
<i>intelligence, nuntius</i>	<i>knife, cultus</i>
<i>intend, velle, in animo habēre</i>	<i>know, scire</i>
<i>intent on, to be, intendēre</i>	<i>knowingly, sciens</i>
<i>intention, quod est in animo</i>	<i>knowledge, cognitio</i>
<i>interest (it is the), interesse</i>	<i>known, notus</i>
<i>interests, res, -erum, id quod refert (impers.)</i>	
<i>introduce, introducēre</i>	<i>Labor, labor</i>
<i>invade, invadēre</i>	<i>labor, to, operam impendēre</i>
<i>invite, invitare</i>	<i>lamentation, lamentatio</i>
<i>investigation, quæstio</i>	<i>lamented, flebilis</i>
<i>Italy, Italia</i>	<i>land, terra</i>
<i>James, Jacobus</i>	<i>large, magnus</i>
<i>join, se jungēre</i>	<i>last (an opportunity), say 'be given'</i>
<i>join (expedition), participem se dare</i>	<i>lasting, diuturnus</i>
<i>journey, iter, -ineris</i>	<i>late, serus</i>
<i>journey, to, iter facēre</i>	<i>late boyhood, adolescentia</i>
<i>journey to, to, adire</i>	<i>latest, novissimus</i>
<i>Jove, Juppiter (gen. Jovis)</i>	<i>Latin, Latinus</i>
<i>joy, gaudium</i>	<i>laugh, ridēre</i>
<i>joyful, lætus</i>	<i>launch, solvēre</i>
<i>judge, judex</i>	<i>law, lex</i>
<i>judgment, mens</i>	<i>lawful, it is, licet (impers.)</i>
<i>Julian, Julius</i>	<i>lay oneself down, recumbere</i>
<i>just, justus</i>	<i>lay siege, oppugnare</i>
<i>justice, justitia</i>	<i>lead, ducēre, deducēre</i>
<i>justly, juste</i>	<i>lead across, traducēre</i>
<i>Keep (quiet), esse</i>	<i>leader, dux</i>
<i>keep temper, iracundiam prohi- bēre</i>	<i>leaf, folium, pampina</i>
<i>kill, occidēre, interficēre</i>	<i>learn, apprehendēre, discēre</i>
<i>kind, benevolens</i>	<i>learned, doctus</i>
<i>kindness, benevolentia</i>	<i>least, minimus</i>
<i>king, rex</i>	<i>leave, relinquēre, abire, excedēre</i>
<i>kingly, regius</i>	<i>leave behind, relinquēre</i>
	<i>legal, secundum leges</i>
	<i>legion, legio</i>
	<i>legislator (use periphrasis), rem- publicam gerēre</i>

leisure, to be at, vacat (<i>impers.</i>)	low, turpis
letter, epistola	luxurious, luxuriosus
lessons, to learn, magistrum audire	lying, mendacium
levity, levitas	<i>Magistrate</i> , magistratus, -ūs
liable, obnoxius	make, facere
libations, see 'pour'	make (enemies), reddere
liberality, benevolentia	make (foolish statement), uti
liberate, liberare	make a mistake, errare
liberty, libertas	make a speech, orationem habere
life, vita	make much of, plurimi facere
life (risk of) use <i>abl.</i> of 'caput'	make preparations, parare
like, similis	make progress, progreedi
like, to become, assimilari	make up one's mind, rem decer-
like to die, moribundus	nere
lingering, cunctatio	make use of, uti
listen, audire	malady, morbus
little, parvus	malefactors, sontes
little (to say), pauca	man, that, ille
live, vivere	man, vir, homo, -inis
locality, locus, regio	manifest, to be, liquet (<i>impers.</i>)
loiter, cessare, cunctari	manner of, in the, more
London, Londinii	many, multi
long, longus	march, iter
long for, cupere	march, to, iter facere
long since, jampridem, jamdu- dum	market, forum
long, to be so, tantum temporis consumere	martyr, martyr
long time, for a, jampridem	master, dominus, magister
lose, amittere, perdere	match for, not a, impar
lose one's head, capite puniri	matter, res, -ei
lost, all to be, actum esse	matter to, to make, interest
lost, to be, deficere	(<i>impers.</i>), refert (<i>impers.</i>)
lot, to be my, contingit (<i>im- pers.</i>)	mean, velle
love, amor	meaning, ratio
love, to, amare	meanwhile, interim
loud (of sound), magnus	measures (to take), consilium
	meditate, meditari
	Mediterranean (sea), nostrum
	meet, obviam ire

<i>meet, occurrēre, convenire</i>	<i>much, multus</i>
<i>meet in the field, oppugnandi occasione præbēre</i>	<i>murder, nex</i>
<i>meeting, comitia</i>	<i>murder, to, trucidare, necare</i>
<i>memory, memoria</i>	<i>murmur, murmurare</i>
<i>mercy, misericordia</i>	<i>music, musica</i>
<i>mercy, at your, in tuâ potes- tate</i>	<i>must needs, necesse est</i>
<i>merit, a man of, insignis</i>	<i>Name, nomen</i>
<i>merit, to, merēri</i>	<i>named (to be), nomen habēre</i>
<i>Metaurus, Metaurus</i>	<i>nationality, gens</i>
<i>method, ratio</i>	<i>naturally, naturâ</i>
<i>method of warfare, militia</i>	<i>nay, imo</i>
<i>midday, at, meridie</i>	<i>near, ad, acc., prope ad, acc.</i>
<i>might, with all one's, pro virili parte</i>	<i>necessary, necesse (indecl.), opus</i>
<i>mile, mille passuum</i>	<i>necessity, necessitas</i>
<i>military, militaris</i>	<i>need, opus</i>
<i>military outpost, custodia</i>	<i>needing caution, periculosus</i>
<i>milk, lac, -tis</i>	<i>neglect, negligēre</i>
<i>mind, mens, ingenium</i>	<i>new, novus</i>
<i>mind, see 'make-up'</i>	<i>never, numquam</i>
<i>mind, to speak one's, secundum mentem loqui</i>	<i>news, nuntius</i>
<i>miserably, misere</i>	<i>news, to bring, nuntiare</i>
<i>misfortune, res adversæ</i>	<i>next (adverb), deinceps</i>
<i>mistake, error, see also 'make'</i>	<i>next point, proximum</i>
<i>mob, vulgus</i>	<i>nick of time (in the), opportune</i>
<i>mode of existence, existentia</i>	<i>night (adj.), nocturnus</i>
<i>moderate, modicus</i>	<i>night, by, noctu</i>
<i>modesty, pudor et verecundia</i>	<i>night-fall, towards, sub noctem</i>
<i>Mæcenas, Mæcenas</i>	<i>no one, none, nemo</i>
<i>moon, luna</i>	<i>north of, septentrionalis (adj.)</i>
<i>month, mensis</i>	<i>not yet, nondum</i>
<i>morrow, on the, crastina die</i>	<i>nothing, nihil</i>
<i>mortification (grief and), aegri- tudo mentis</i>	<i>now, jam, nunc</i>
<i>motion (proposal), sententia</i>	<i>number, numerus</i>
<i>mother, mater</i>	<i>Obey, obedire</i>
	<i>object beloved, amatus</i>
	<i>oblige, cogēre</i>
	<i>observe, not to, ignorare</i>

obstacle, impedimentum	own people (<i>his</i>), sui
occupy, capere	own to, admittere
of (about), de, abl.	owing to, propter, acc.
offence, delictum	owner, possessor
offer, offerre	
offered (<i>opportunity</i>), oblatus	Pain, dolor
office, officium, magistratus	panic, pavor
often, saepe;	pardon, venia
old, <i>vetus</i> , -eris	pardon, ignoscere
old age, <i>senectus</i> , -utis	pass, agere
old age, in one's, senex	passion, cupiditas
oldest, natu maximus	patience, tolerantia malorum
omit, omittere, negligere	pay, solvere
on account of, propter, acc., ob, acc.	pay honor, honore afficere
once, semel	peace, tranquillitas
one apiece, singuli, -æ	penalty of death, use 'caput'
one, unus	people, populus, plebs
open, aperire	peoples, gentes
openly, palam	perceive, intelligere
opinion, sententia, opinio	perceive, sentire
opponent, adversarius	perform, facere
opportunity, occasio	perform exploits, gerer
oppose, obsistere	perhaps, forsitan
oppose, adversari, reniti	peril, discrimen
oppressive, nimius	perish, perire
oracle, oraculum	permit, permittere
orator, orator	persuade, persuadere, suadere
order, jubere	pestilence, pestilentia
ordinary kind, of, vulgaris	philosopher, philosophus
others, ceteri	philosophy, philosophia
ought, debere	picture, pictura
our friends, nostri	pirate, latrocinium
overtake, consequi	pitch, ponere
overthrow, subvertere	pity, to, misereri
overtures, to make, sollici- tare	place, locus
overwhelmed, captus	plain, manifestus
own, one's, suus	plain (<i>advice</i>), sinceris verbis
	plan, consilium
	plead, orare

<i>plead as excuse</i> , se excusare	<i>practice</i> , exercitium
propter	<i>practise</i> , exercēre, uti
<i>pleasant</i> , jucundus	<i>praise</i> , laudare
<i>please</i> , placēre	<i>pray</i> , precare
<i>please, if you</i> , si placet	<i>precautions</i> , take, cavēre
<i>pleased, to be</i> , placet (<i>impers.</i>)	<i>precious</i> , pretiosus
<i>pleasure</i> , voluptas	<i>precipitation</i> , celeritas
<i>plebeian</i> , plebeius	<i>prefer</i> , malle
<i>plebs</i> , plebs, -bis	<i>prefer</i> (<i>use posthabēre</i> , 'to sacrifice,' by inverting the sentence)
<i>pledge</i> , fides, -ei	<i>preferable</i> , optabilior
<i>plot</i> , conjuratio	<i>preparations</i> , to make, parare
<i>plough</i> , arare	<i>present</i> , præsens
<i>plunder</i> , diripēre, prædari	<i>present (to)</i> , donare
<i>poem</i> , poema, -atis	<i>present (at)</i> to be, interesse, adesse
<i>policy</i> , consilia, -orum	<i>preserve</i> , servare, conservare
<i>policy</i> , belli ratio	<i>press in upon</i> , impugnare
<i>policy of defence</i> , injurias a sede	<i>presume</i> , audēre
propulsare	<i>pretend</i> , simulare
<i>policy (the best)</i> , use 'prodesse,' to profit	<i>prevent</i> , prohibēre
<i>Pompey</i> , Pompeius	<i>principle</i> , principium
<i>poor</i> , malus	<i>prisoner</i> , reus
<i>popularity</i> , studium	<i>probity of</i> , probus
<i>portrait</i> , effigies	<i>proclaim</i> , decernēre
<i>possessions</i> , opes, -um	<i>prodigal of</i> , prodigus
<i>possibly (after negative)</i> , omnino	<i>produce</i> , fructus, -uum
<i>post</i> , statio	<i>progeny</i> , stirps
<i>pour libations</i> , libare	<i>promise</i> , fides, missa (neut. pl.)
<i>poverty</i> , paupertas	<i>promise</i> , promittēre, pollicēri
<i>poverty (in)</i> , pauper	<i>prompted (by nature)</i> , ingenitum
<i>power</i> , potestas	<i>propensity</i> , cupido, -inis
<i>power (of Rome)</i> , imperium	<i>property</i> , res, -erum
<i>power of speech</i> , facundia	<i>propose</i> , auctor
<i>power (in sense of forces)</i> , copiæ, -arum	<i>proscribe</i> , proscribēre
<i>power (to have it in one's)</i> , licet	<i>protect</i> , patrocinari
<i>powerful (people)</i> , magnam potentiam habentes	

<i>proud</i> , superbus	<i>raven</i> , corvus
<i>prove</i> , demonstrare	<i>reach</i> , pervenire
<i>provide for</i> , providere	<i>read</i> , legere
<i>provided that</i> , dummodo	<i>ready</i> , paratus
<i>providence</i> , consilium	<i>ready to help</i> , paratus
<i>province</i> , provincia	<i>real value</i> , use 'valere'
<i>prudence</i> , sapientia	<i>realize</i> , adipisci
<i>prudently</i> , prudenter	<i>really</i> , re vera
<i>public (burdens)</i> , in civitate	<i>rear</i> , to, educare
<i>public life</i> , res publica	<i>rear</i> , agmen novissimum
<i>publicly</i> , palam	<i>rear-guard</i> , novissimi
<i>punish</i> , punire	<i>reasonably</i> , to speak, use 'prudens'
<i>pupil</i> , discipulus	<i>recall</i> , revocare
<i>purposely</i> , de industria	<i>receive</i> , accipere
<i>put to death</i> , occidere, or use mori	<i>recommend</i> suadere, monere
<i>put to sea</i> , navigare	<i>reconcile</i> , in concordiam redigere
<i>Pythagoras</i> , follower of, Pytha- goreus	<i>record vote</i> , suffragium inire
<i>Quality</i> , of such a, talis	<i>recover</i> (trans.), recuperare
<i>quarter</i> , to receive, vitam acci- pere	<i>recover</i> (intrans.), convalescere
<i>queen</i> , regina	<i>reference to</i> , in, de, abl.
<i>question</i> , controversia	<i>refuse</i> , recusare
<i>quick (at learning)</i> , acer	<i>regard</i> , habere
<i>quickly</i> , celeriter, cito	<i>regular (signal)</i> , familiaris
<i>quiet</i> , securus, quietus	<i>regularly</i> , constanter
<i>quite</i> , admodum	<i>regulate</i> , providere
<i>Race</i> , genus	<i>rejoice</i> , gaudere
<i>rampart</i> , vallum	<i>relate</i> , narrare
<i>ranks</i> , acies, -ei	<i>remain</i> , manere, restare
<i>rapid</i> , citus, celer	<i>remember</i> , recordari, reminisci
<i>rapine and plunder</i> , rapina	<i>remiss</i> , to be, negligere
<i>rarely</i> , raro	<i>remove</i> , deducere
<i>rash daring</i> , audacia	<i>repay</i> , reddere
<i>rashly</i> , temere	<i>repay (avour)</i> , referre gratiam
<i>rashness</i> , temeritas	<i>repeal</i> , abrogare
	<i>reply</i> , respondere
	<i>reported</i> , it is, dicitur
	<i>Republi</i> ; res publica
	<i>reputation</i> , existimatio

require, indigēre (<i>order</i>), ju- bēre	rose, rosa
rescue, to come to the, (<i>auxilio</i>) subvenire	round (prep.), circa, acc.
reside, degēre	roundly, prolix
resist, resistēre	rouse, excitare
resist, defendēre	rout, fugare
resource, artificium	royal, regius
respect, honore afficēre	Rubicon, Rubicon, -onis
responsibility, rei onus, -eris	ruin, evertēre
rest, quies, -etis	ruin health, (<i>corpus</i>) frangere
rest (<i>the</i>), reliquus	rule, regēre
rest, to take, requiescēre	rule of his, use imperatōr, 'ruler'
restore (<i>health</i>), firmare	rules of strategy, ars impera- toria
restrain, prohibēre	rumour, rumor, sermo
retire, deceđere, fugēre	run away, fugēre, in fugam se conferre
retreat, fuga, receptus -ūs	run the risk, periclitari
retreat, to, pedem referre	rush, ruēre
retreating, recessus, -ūs	
return, in, rursus	sack, diripēre
return, to, redire	sacred, sacratus
reveal, aperire, manifestare	sacrifice, to, sacrificare
reverse, clades, -is	sacrifice (<i>oneself</i>), vitam jactare
revolution, res novae	sacrifice, to make a, posthabēre
reward, præmium, pretium	sacrifice, to make, damni or jac- turam facēre
ride round, circumvehi	sad, tristis
rich, dives, -itis	sadly, multum
ride up to, advehi	afe, tutus
ridiculous, see 'appear'	safe, not, periculosus
ringleader, auctor seditionis	safety, salus, -utis
rising paulatim acclivis	sail, navibus vehi, navigare, also see 'set sail'
risk, see 'run'	sake of, for the, causā
risk everything, summam rerum in aleam dare	sake, for our, nostri causa
river, flumen	sally (to), erumpēre
rock, saxum, rupes, -is	same, idem
Rome, Roma	Samnite, Samnita
Rome, of, Romanus	Samnite (adj.), Samniticus
Roman, Romanus	

<i>satisfied to be, satisfit (impers.)</i>	<i>set oneself against (to), stare con ra</i>
<i>save, conservare</i>	<i>set sail, navem solvēre</i>
<i>save life of, servare</i>	<i>settle in, considēre</i>
<i>say, dicēre</i>	<i>seven, septem</i>
<i>scarcely, vix</i>	<i>seven times, septies</i>
<i>scheme, consilium</i>	<i>severe defeat, clades, -is</i>
<i>scourge, flagellum</i>	<i>severity acerbtias</i>
<i>scourge, verberare</i>	<i>shield, ancile</i>
<i>scout, speculator</i>	<i>shocking, miserrimus</i>
<i>sea, mare</i>	<i>short, brevis</i>
<i>search for, quærēre</i>	<i>show, ostendēre</i>
<i>second, alter, secundus</i>	<i>show courage, se præbēre fotrem</i>
<i>second, every, alternus</i>	<i>show of gladiators, gladiatores</i>
<i>secondly, deinde</i>	<i>show oneself, prodire</i>
<i>secret, secretum</i>	<i>show promise, spem facēre</i>
<i>secretly, clam</i>	<i>shrieks, voces</i>
<i>secure, securus</i>	<i>shrink from, fugēre, recusare</i>
<i>secure of victory, exploratum se victurum</i>	<i>Sicily, Sicilia</i>
<i>see, visit, visēre</i>	<i>sight (endure), say 'to see,' aspicere</i>
<i>seek, petēre</i>	<i>sign, signum</i>
<i>seek (justice), consectare</i>	<i>signal, signum</i>
<i>seem, vidēri</i>	<i>silence, silentium</i>
<i>seem good, placet</i>	<i>silent, tacitus</i>
<i>seize, occupare</i>	<i>silent, to be, tacēre</i>
<i>self-preservation, vitam conservare</i>	<i>simplicity, simplicitas, ingenuitas</i>
<i>sell, vendēre</i>	<i>simplicity of, simplicissimus</i>
<i>Senate, Senatus, ūs</i>	<i>size, magnitudo, -inis, statura</i>
<i>Senate-house, curia</i>	<i>slaughter, strages -is</i>
<i>send, mittēre</i>	<i>slaughter, to, occidēre</i>
<i>sentiments (his real), quid revera sentiat</i>	<i>slave, servus</i>
<i>separately, disjuncti</i>	<i>slavery, servitus, -utis</i>
<i>serious, gravis</i>	<i>s'ay, interficēre, occidēre</i>
<i>serpent, serpens</i>	<i>slow, tardus</i>
<i>serve in campaigns, merēre stipendia</i>	<i>slowly, lente</i>
<i>service, to do, officium præstare</i>	<i>small, angustus</i>
	<i>so far, hactenus</i>
	<i>society of men, say 'men'</i>

<i>soft, mollis</i>	<i>straightway, statim</i>
<i>solace, solatium</i>	<i>stranger, alienus</i>
<i>soldier, miles</i>	<i>strategy, see 'rules'</i>
<i>solemnly, sollenniter</i>	<i>stream, flumen</i>
<i>solemnly (to promise), jurejurando</i>	<i>streets, strata viarum</i>
<i>son, filius</i>	<i>strength, vires, -ium</i>
<i>sorrow, dolor</i>	<i>strengthen, roborare</i>
<i>sort, of that, id genus</i>	<i>strike (blow), infligere</i>
<i>sound (a signal) dare</i>	<i>strive, conari</i>
<i>space, locus</i>	<i>strong (current), magnus</i>
<i>Spain, Hispania</i>	<i>stubborn, pervicax</i>
<i>spare, parcere</i>	<i>study, to, incumbere, studere</i>
<i>spark, scintilla</i>	<i>stupid, stultus</i>
<i>speak, loqui</i>	<i>subject, subditus</i>
<i>speak to, alloqui</i>	<i>subject to, obnoxious</i>
<i>speak about, memorare</i>	<i>subjection, subjectio</i>
<i>spectators, spectantes</i>	<i>succeed, evenire</i>
<i>speech, oratio</i>	<i>succeed, bene vertere</i>
<i>speedily, cito</i>	<i>success, eventus, use also 'bene venire'</i>
<i>spend, exhaurire</i>	<i>such, talis</i>
<i>spread, ingravescere</i>	<i>suffer, experiri, -pati</i>
<i>spring, ver</i>	<i>suffice, sufficere</i>
<i>spring-time, see 'spring'</i>	<i>sufficiently, } satis</i>
<i>spring to the saddle, equum rapere</i>	<i>sufficient, }</i>
<i>spy, explorator</i>	<i>suggestion of, at the, use suadere, 'to suggest'</i>
<i>stake (to be at), agi</i>	<i>suicidal, almost, summe exitialis</i>
<i>star, stella</i>	<i>suicide, to commit, suapte manus interficere</i>
<i>start, proficisci</i>	<i>suitable, aptus</i>
<i>state, res publica</i>	<i>sum of money, pecunia</i>
<i>statue, statua</i>	<i>summary (punishment), summus, with statim</i>
<i>steeped, tinctus</i>	<i>summon, accire</i>
<i>step-mother, noverca</i>	<i>sun, sol</i>
<i>stick, fustis</i>	<i>supper, coena</i>
<i>still, adhuc</i>	
<i>stir, stir from, discedere</i>	
<i>stone, lapis, -idis</i>	
<i>straight, rectus</i>	

supplication, supplicatio
supplies, commeatus, ūs
support, subsidia (*pl.*)
surname, cognomen
surprised, to be, mirari
surrender, to, se dedere
surrender, cedere
surround, circumdare
suspect (the more), minus credere
suspicion (above), use suspicere,
 ‘to suspect’
suspense, to be in anxious, pen-
 dēre animi
swear, jurare
sword, gladius
Syracuse, Syracusæ

Tactics, belli artes
take, capere, sumere
take (advice), sequi
take a nap, dormire
take auspices, auspicare
take a walk, ambulare
take by storm, expugnare
take care, cavere
take care of, providere
take counsel, consulere
take in good part, boni consulere
take measures, providere
take rest, requiescere
take trouble, incommodum subire
take with, adducere
taken all together, simul sumpti
taller, major
Tarpeian, Tarpeius
task, opus, -eris
teach, docere
teacher, doctor
tear, lacerare

tear open, scindere
tell, dicere, narrare
tell (secrets), manifestare
tell the truth, verax esse
temper, see ‘keep’
terms, conditions
terrible (anxiety), crudelis
terrify, terrere
territory, terra
terror, terror
thankful, to be, gratias agere
theft, furtum
there (adv.), ibi
thigh, femur, -oris
thing, res, -ei
think, putare
thoughtful remarks, diligenter
 scripta
threaten, minitari, minari
three, tres
through, per, acc.
throw oneself, se projicere
thunder, tonare
tidings, nuntius
time, tempus, -oris
time, the, hora
time, in, in tempore
time, to be in, ad tempus perve-
 nire
times (many), use ‘partes’
tiresome, lentus
together (to speak), invicem
to-morrow, cras
tongue, lingua
too late, sero
too long, diutius
too much, nimis
towards, ad noun versus,
 acc.

<i>trade, to, mercaturam facere</i>	<i>two apiece, bis</i>
<i>traitor, patriæ traditor</i>	<i>tyranny, regia servitus, -utis</i>
<i>transaction, res, -ei</i>	
<i>transfer (to their territory), vertere contra</i>	<i>Unavenged, inultus</i>
<i>travel, to, iter facere</i>	<i>unawares, see 'unwittingly'</i>
<i>treachery, proditio</i>	<i>uncertain, incertus</i>
<i>treason (to speak), contra rem publicam</i>	<i>uncertain, say 'not certain'</i>
<i>treat a person, se ostendere erga, acc.</i>	<i>undecided, sub judice</i>
<i>treatment (for criminal), severitas</i>	<i>under (the yoke), sub. acc.</i>
<i>Trebia, Trebia</i>	<i>undermine, subruere</i>
<i>trial (after a), say 'being condemned,' damnatus</i>	<i>understand, intelligere</i>
<i>tribe, tribus, -ūs</i>	<i>unexpected, præter spem</i>
<i>tribe voting first, prærogativa</i>	<i>undertake, suscipere</i>
<i>tribune, tribunus</i>	<i>undertake, enterprise, rem subire</i>
<i>trifles, parva, nugae</i>	<i>ungrateful, ingratus</i>
<i>triumphal procession, triumphus</i>	<i>universally(hated), use 'omnes'</i>
<i>troops, exercitus, -ūs</i>	<i>unjust, injuriosus, injustus</i>
<i>troops, milites</i>	<i>unkindly, haud benigne</i>
<i>trouble, see 'take'</i>	<i>unlike, dissimilis</i>
<i>troupe, turma</i>	<i>unmanly, indignus</i>
<i>troupe of cavalry, equitatus, -ūs</i>	<i>unprepared, imparatus</i>
<i>Troy, Troja</i>	<i>unwilling, to be, nolle</i>
<i>truce, induciæ</i>	<i>unwillingly, use 'invitus' (adj.)</i>
<i>trust, fides, -ei</i>	<i>unwisely, insipienter</i>
<i>trust, credere</i>	<i>unwittingly, use 'imprudens'</i>
<i>truth, veritas</i>	<i>up (the hill), sub, acc.</i>
<i>try, conari</i>	<i>upbraid, objicere</i>
<i>try, studere</i>	<i>urge, hortari</i>
<i>try (fortune), me committere</i>	<i>use, utilitas</i>
<i>tumult, strepitus, -ūs</i>	<i>use (violence), afferre</i>
<i>tunic, tunica</i>	<i>useless (it is), nihil refert</i>
<i>turn (intrans.), verti</i>	<i>usually, more than, plus solito</i>
<i>twenty, viginti</i>	<i>usurer, fœnerator</i>
<i>tyranny, servitus, -utis</i>	<i>usury, fœneratio</i>
	<i>utter (cry), emittere</i>
	<i>utter (name), nominare</i>
	<i>Vain, gloriosus</i>
	<i>vain, in, vanus</i>
	<i>value, real, use 'valere'</i>

value, <i>æstimare</i>	water, <i>aqua</i>
vehement, <i>vehemens</i>	waver, <i>nutare</i>
verdict, see 'give'	weak woman, <i>muliercula</i>
vice, <i>vitium</i> , <i>turpitudo</i>	wear out, <i>defatigari</i>
victoriously, use 'victoria'	weary, to, <i>defatigare</i>
victory, <i>victoria</i>	weary, <i>fatigatus</i>
vie with, <i>certare</i>	weary, to be, <i>tædet</i> (<i>impers.</i>)
vigor, with, <i>acerime</i>	week, <i>hebdomas</i>
vile criminal, <i>homo sceleratus</i>	welcome, <i>gratus</i>
villa, <i>villa</i>	well, to be, <i>salvus esse</i>
violence, <i>violentia</i> , -vis	well, <i>bene</i>
violent, <i>violentus</i>	wherever (<i>of motion</i>), <i>quocunque</i>
virtuously, <i>honeste</i> , <i>bene</i>	whole, <i>totus</i>
visit, <i>visere</i>	wife, <i>uxor</i>
voyage, <i>cursus</i> , -ūs	will, <i>arbitrium</i>
voyage, to have or make a, navigare	will, <i>voluntas</i>
Wage, <i>gerere</i>	willingly, use 'ultra velle'
wailing, <i>lamentatio</i>	wine, <i>vinum</i>
wailing, <i>ploratus</i> , <i>planctus</i>	winter, <i>hiems</i>
wait for, <i>expectare</i>	winter quarters, <i>hiberna</i>
walk, <i>ambulare</i> , <i>iter facere</i> , incedere	wisdom, <i>sapientia</i>
walls, <i>mœnia</i>	wise, <i>sapiens</i>
want, <i>opus</i>	wisely, <i>sapienter</i>
want, to, <i>velle</i>	wish (to), <i>velle</i>
want, to, <i>opus esse</i>	wish well to, <i>bene affici</i>
wanting, to be, <i>deesse</i>	wish to possess, <i>cupere</i>
wanting in, to be, <i>egere</i>	without (adj.) <i>expers</i>
war, <i>bellum</i>	without, <i>sine</i> , <i>abl.</i>
war down, <i>debellare</i>	without fail, <i>omnino</i>
warlike, <i>virilis</i> et <i>militaris</i>	without a hearing, <i>inauditus</i> , unheard
warmth, <i>tepor</i>	without flinching, <i>immobilis</i>
warn, <i>admonere</i> , <i>monere</i>	witness, <i>testis</i>
warning, to give, say 'to warn'	withstand, <i>resistere</i>
waste (time), <i>impendere</i>	woman, <i>femina</i>
watch, <i>vigiles</i>	wondering, to be, <i>scire velle</i>
	word, <i>verbum</i>
	word (to send), <i>nuntius</i>
	work, <i>opus</i> , -eris, <i>labor</i>

<i>world</i> , mundus	<i>write</i> , scribēre
<i>worse</i> , pejor	<i>wrong</i> , <i>to do</i> , errare
<i>worst (health)</i> , tenuissimus	<i>wrongs</i> , mala
<i>worst enemy</i> , infensissimus	
<i>worth</i> , <i>to be</i> , constat (<i>impers.</i>)	<i>Year</i> , annus
<i>worth (having)</i> , gravissimus	<i>yet</i> , adhuc
<i>worthy</i> , dignus	<i>yoke</i> , jugum
<i>worthy of mention</i> , <i>anything</i> , quidquam momenti	<i>young</i> , puer
<i>wound</i> , vulnus, -eris	<i>young man</i> , juvenis
<i>wound</i> , <i>to</i> , vulnerare	<i>youth</i> , adolescentia, juventus, -utis
<i>wounded</i> , saucius?	<i>youth, in one's</i> , juvenis
<i>wretched</i> , miser, -era, -erum	

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

“HANDBOOK OF HOMERIC STUDY.”

Crown 8vo, 354 and xvi. pp. Twenty-two Plates.

Price, 6s. net.

PRESS OPINIONS.

“A book of substantial erudition, expressed in a clear and interesting way.”—*Scotsman*.

“It is an honest, candid, careful, and within its limits it is a lucidly arranged book. It makes the readers think for themselves.”—Andrew Lang, in the *Academy*.

“Of the subjects which constitute Homeric study, Professor Browne writes admirably, and furnishes an introduction to them which could not be bettered.”—*Saturday Review*.

“Mr. Browne has collected into one volume all the information which the readers of Homer needs.”—*Oxford Magazine*.

“Fruitful in suggestion; trustworthy and useful.”—*Notes and Queries*.

“A very complete and correct resumé of the Homeric question.”—*Glasgow Herald*.

“A sound book, which should prove most useful to the ordinary student of the poems. . . . We have discovered no obvious errors; throughout the tone is scholarly and moderate.”—*School*.

"We know no book in the English language so suited for the undergraduate to study . . . if he masters it, he will have mastered the ever-living Homeric question."—*Dublin Daily Express*.

"Eminently modern."—*New York Times*.

"All the most recent contributions to the literary and archæological study of the poems are dispassionately stated and considered."—*Journal of Hellenic Studies*.

"Shows an immense amount of careful and thoughtful labour, and will be cordially welcomed in the schools."—*Educational Times*.

"Generally sane and reasonable . . . the writer blinks no difficulties if he does make light of some . . . Illustrations good and well chosen."—*School World*.

"Excellent specimen of a literary text-book, well arranged, indexed and illustrated."—*Library World*.

"For the professed student a book of the highest value. . . . Professor Browne has succeeded in his endeavours to lay before his readers the elements out of which they can form their own judgment."—*Bookman*.

"We realize from experience the necessity of a handbook like the one before us."—*American Catholic Quarterly Review*.

"Professor Browne writes with knowledge and sympathy both for his subject and for his readers. He illuminates the darkness, minimises the difficulties, yet leaves the student free to form his own opinion."—*Evening Standard*.

"It is a good book which will be found helpful and stimulating even by the German student who wishes to devote himself to a deep study of the Homeric Poems."—H. Kluge, in *Neue Philologische Rundschau*,

BOSTON COLLEGE



3 9031 01391327 2

11044

11044

Author

Browne, Henry.

Title Handbook of Latin
composition; second ed.

Longmans, 1907.

Browne

BOSTON COLLEGE LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY HEIGHTS
CHESTNUT HILL, MASS.

Books may be kept for two weeks and may be
renewed for the same period, unless reserved.

Two cents a day is charged for each book kept
overtime.

If you cannot find what you want, ask the
Librarian who will be glad to help you.

The borrower is responsible for books drawn on
his card and for all fines accruing on the same.



